

ANNOTATED GLOSSARY
TO THE
-RAWZATU' Z-ZAKIYYAH

The Text-Book for the
H.S. Examination in Arabic.

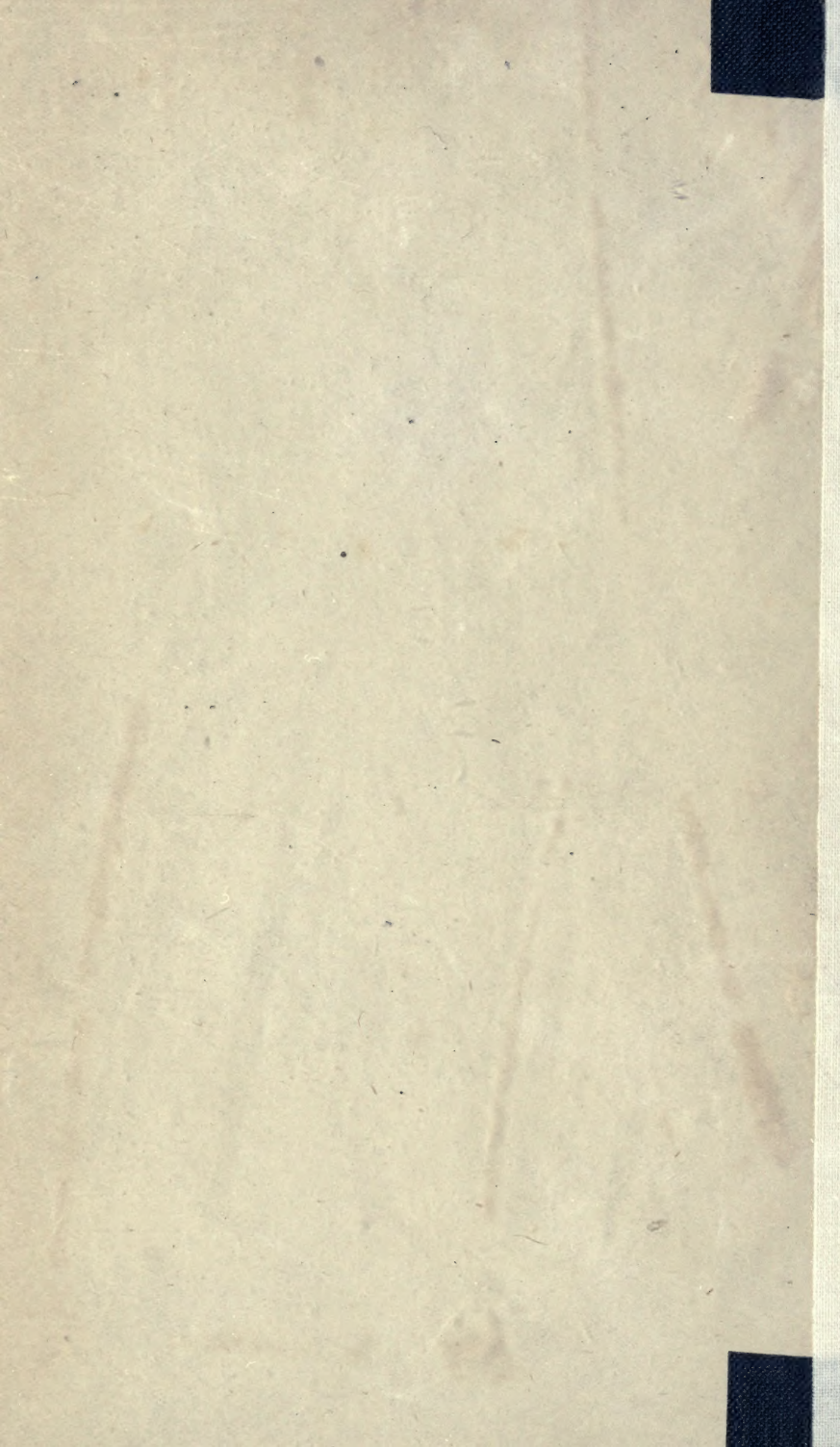
BY
R. F. AZOO,
Arabic Instructor to the Board of Examiners.

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY.

Calcutta :
OFFICE OF THE BOARD OF EXAMINERS.

1908.

PJ
7671
A862



ANNOTATED GLOSSARY
TO THE
AR-RAWZATU' Z-ZAKIYYAH

The Text-Book for the
H.S. Examination in Arabic.

BY
Rizkallah
R. F. AZOO,
Arabic Instructor to the Board of Examiners.

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY.

205754
20. 9. 26

Calcutta :
OFFICE OF THE BOARD OF EXAMINERS.

1908.



The Text-Book for the
P. S. Examination in Arabic

15
7671
A862


PJ
7671
A862

PREFACE.

THE present text-book for the Higher Standard Examination in Arabic contains a large number of colloquialisms and modern words and phrases, most of which have not yet found their way into dictionaries. It was with the object of explaining such words that this little work was undertaken at the instance of Lieutenant-Colonel D. C. Phillott, Secretary to the Board of Examiners, Calcutta. It was thought advisable to include in the list all words that were likely to present any difficulty to the student; while, for the benefit of beginners, the first section of the work has been very fully annotated.

As will be seen, the book is in the form of a running commentary, the numbers in heavy type referring to the pages of the original text.

R. F. A.



Ar = Rauzatu = z = Zakiyyah.¹

(The Fruitful Garden.)

[رَوْضَةٌ, pl. رِيَاضٌ, “A meadow, or garden.” زَكِيَّةٌ “of a rich, fertile soil.”]

PART I. SECTION I.—FABLES.

I.—THE GLOW-WORM AND THE MONKEYS.

مَثَلٌ—قِرْدٌ. “Monkeys”: sing. قِرْدَةٌ and قِرْدٌ, “An example.” لَا يَتَعَطَّ بِكَلَامٍ غَيْرِهِ, “who listens not to the advice of others”: اتَعَطَّ reflexive of عَطَّ, “To counsel; admonish.” غَامَرُ: فِيْغَامَرُ بِنَفْسِهِ: The فِ is illative. غَامَرَ “To plunge, or throw one’s self, into difficulties”: from يَعْطِبُ, عَطِبَ “An abyss of water.” غَمْرَةٌ or غَمْرٌ

¹ The letters in الرَوْضَةُ الزَكِيَّةُ give, when added as numerals, the sum 1905, the year in which the book was compiled.

“To perish.” زَمُوا, “They say; they have related.”¹
 فَالْتَمَسُوا—سَاكِنٌ pl. of سَكَنَ, “were dwelling”: كَانُوا سَكَنًا
 “They sought for.”² The فَ here is a simple connective, and corresponds to a full stop. ذَاتِ رِيَّاحٍ وَأَمْطَارٍ
 “windy and rainy; stormy.”³ رِيحٌ is generally fem.;
 so also نَارٌ, “Fire.” فَلَمْ يَجِدُوا, “but they found not.”
 تَطِيرُ, “flying about.”⁴ كَأَنَّهُ, “as if it were.” شَرَارَةٌ, “A
 spark of fire,” ظَنُّوْهَا نَارًا, “They thought it was fire.”
 ظَنٌ takes two objective complements. حَطْبٌ, “Fire-
 wood.” أَلْقَى, “To throw.” جَعَلَ, followed by
 the imperf. indic., “To begin.” نَفَخَ, “To blow
 (with the mouth.)” يَطْمَعُ, “To desire (with أَنْ):
 طَمَعًا أَنْ “in the hope of, or striving to”: adverbial
 accus. of cause or of state أَوْقَدَ, “To kindle;
 light a fire.” يَصْطَلُونَ بِهَا, “to warm themselves

¹ Note the use of the perfect. *Za'ama* is mostly used in relation to what is false or doubtful.

² The root meaning of *lamasa* is “to feel or touch with the hand”: hence, ‘to seek,’ by feeling, or in any manner.

³ Note the use of the pl. to express tempestuousness.

⁴ The imperfect *taṣīru* forms an adjectival clause qualifying the indefinite noun *yarā'atan*. After a definite noun, the imperfect expresses ‘state’; in both cases, it is generally rendered in English by the participle.

(by means of it).” نَادَى “To call to.” لا تَتَعَبُوا
 “Trouble not yourselves.” فَلَمَّا طَالَ ذَلِكَ عَلَيْهِ “At last,
 when this had gone on for some time.” عَزَمَ عَلَى
 “To resolve, decide upon.” لِيَنْهَاهُمْ عَمَّا هُمْ فِيهِ “To dis-
 suade them from what they were doing.” يَمُرُّ مَرًّا (with
 بِ or عَلَى) “To pass by.” مَا عَمَدَ إِلَيْهِ “what he inten-
 ded to do.” لا تَلْتَمِسْ “Do not seek, strive to.” قَوْمٌ
 inf. n. نَقَرِيْمٌ “To make straight.” اِسْتَقَامَ “To be, or
 become, straight.” مَانِعٌ “hard”: *lit.* that prevents
 (the sword from cutting it). لَا يَنْقَطِعُ “cannot be cut”:
 قِطْعٌ “To cut asunder.” جَرَّبَ “To try.” عُوْدٌ “Piece of
 wood, or branch of a tree.” لَا يَنْحَنِي “unbending.”
 اِنْحَنَى “To bend,” *intrans.* قَوْسٌ fem., “A bow”; pl.
 يُطِيعُ, أَطَاعَ “To refuse.” يَأْبَى, أَبَى. قَسِيٌّ and أَقْوَأَسُ
 “To obey”: طَاعَةٌ “Obedience.” اِيْعَرَفْنَهُمْ “in order to
 tell them, make known to them.” وَإِذَا بَ “All of a sud-
 den.”¹ ضَرَبَ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ “He flung him upon the ground.”

¹ Introduces a person or thing that comes suddenly into view.

II.—THE THREE FISHES.

لَا يَقْنَطُ مِنَ الرَّأْيِ عِنْدَ الشَّدَةِ, "who is never at a loss, or in despair, when any difficulty arises."¹
 عَدِيرٌ, pl. غَدَارٌ, "Pond, pool."² كَيْسَةٌ, "Quick in intellect; clever; intelligent." أَكَيْسُ مِنْهَا, "Quicker in intellect than the first." عَاجِرَةٌ, "Lacking in intelligence; helpless." بَنَجْرَةٌ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ "on high ground." لَا يَكَادُ يَقْرِبُهُ أَحَدٌ, "almost inaccessible; which people seldom came near." نَهْرٌ جَارٍ, "A flowing stream": يَجْرِي وَجَرَى, "To flow." فَاتَفَقَ, "It happened." اجْتَاَزَ بِ, "To pass by." تَوَاعَدَا, "They made an appointment; engaged."
 2 ارْتَابَ بِ, "at once." لَوَقَّتَهَا, "A net." شَبَاكٌ, pl. of شَبَاكٌ, "To suspect." خَافَ=تَخَوَّفَ, "To fear, be afraid of." لَمْ تُعَرِّجْ عَلَى شَيْءٍ, "did not pause, or stop, at any thing; went straight away." مَكَثَتْ مَكَانَهَا, "stayed in her place." مَدْخَلٌ, "Place of ingress." فَإِذَا بِهِمَا قَدْ سَدَّاهُ, "but found they had firmly secured it": سَدَّ, "To

¹ In other words, "who will not give up all hope of discovering, by wise and cautious exercise of judgment, means of escape in dangerous situations."

² "A pool of water left by a torrent": from *ghāḍara* "to leave."

bar." حَيْنُذٍ, "At that time; then." يَفْرِطُ, فَرَطٌ, "To act with negligence," تَفْرِيطٌ, "Careless neglect of duty." عَاقِبَةُ, pl. عَوَاقِبُ, "Consequence; result." كَيْفَ الْحِيلَةُ عَلَى هَذِهِ, "What steps to take in a circumstance like this? What is to be done now?" قَلَّ مَا تَنْجَحُ "seldom succeeds." حِيلَةُ الْعَجَلَةِ, "A plan devised in haste." اِرْهَاقٌ, "Hurry; constraint." لَا يَقْنَطُ مِنْ, "ever believes in." مَنَافِعُ الرَّأْيِ, "The benefits of counsel." يَيْئَسُ, يَيْئَسٌ, "To fall in despair." عَلَى حَالٍ, "under any circumstance." لا يَدَعُ, "will not give up": وَدَعَ, is rarely used in the Perf. جَهَدٌ, "Making efforts." تَمَارَتَ, "To feign one's self to be dead." طَفَتَ عَلَى وَجْهِ الْمَاءِ, "floated on the surface of the water." مُنْقَلِبَةً, "turning." تَارَةً, "at one time; now." وَتَارَةً, "at another time; now." يَنْبُ, وَثَبَ, "To leap; jump." يَنْجُو, نَجَا, "To escape." لَمْ تَزَلْ فِي إِقْبَالٍ, "ceased not moving backwards and forwards; coming and going." مَيِّدٌ, pass. of مَادَ, "was caught."

III.—THE MERCHANT AND THE MAN TO WHOM PROPERTY
WAS ENTRUSTED (مُسْتَوْدَعٌ عِنْدَهُ).

بِمِثْلِ, أَخَذَ بِنَّارِهِ, “who takes his revenge; retaliates.”
 “by means similar to.”¹ مَا تُثَرِّبُ بِهِ, probably we should
 read مَا وَتَرَبَّ بِهِ, “the means by which he had been wronged.”
 خَرَجَ, “To set out on a journey.”² بِأَرْضِ كَذَا, “in such a country.”
 إِلَى بَعْضِ الْوُجُوهِ, “to a certain place; or, on a matter
 of business”: وَجْهٌ meaning both “that which one has
 to do,” and “the destination of a journey,” اِبْتِغَاءَ الرِّزْقِ
 “for the sake of gain”: اِبْتِغَاءٌ, adv. acc. of cause or
 reason; inf. n. of بَغَى=اِبْتَغَى, “To seek after,
 desire, or endeavour to get.” أَمَّانٌ, pl. مَن, “A weight
 equivalent to 2 pounds.” أَوْدَعَ, “To deposit, give in
 deposit.” أَخٌ, “A brother”; pl. إِخْوَةٌ and إِخْوَانٌ, the

¹ As they stand, these words mean, “the means by which he had been retaliated against”; but as there is nothing in the story to show that the merchant had done the other any wrong, the reading suggested seems to be more appropriate. *Watara* means “to commit a crime against one by slaying his relation, or taking away his property.” We may also take *thu'ira* to stand for *wutira* by a figure of rhetoric called *mushākalah* (lit. resemblance), in which a word may be substituted for another, by reason of the latter forming the principal word in the preceding clause.

² *Ka-dhā*, which lit. means “like this, thus,” is sometimes used as one word, and as such is made the complement of a prefixed noun, as in the example above.

latter generally meaning companions or friends.
 الْقَدَمُ, inf. n. قُدُومٌ “Coming off a journey.”
 “demanded.” أَفْطَعُ مِنْ أَيْيَابِهَا, جُرْدَانُ, pl. of جُرْدٌ, “Rats.”
 أَيْيَابُ, “so sharp as their teeth in cutting iron.”
 اِدْعَى, pl. of نَابُ, “Canine teeth.” مَدَقَ, “To believe.”
 “To assert,” either truly or falsely. يَلْقَى, لَقِيَ, “To
 meet; see; find.” مِنْ آلِغَدٍ “on the morrow; next day.”¹
 هَلْ عِنْدَكَ, “Have you?” مِنْ عِنْدِكَ, “from thy house.”
 أَمْسٍ = بِالْأَمْسِ, “Yesterday.” بُزَاةٌ, pl. of بُزَا, “Falcon, hawk”:
 in India, “the goshawk.” قَدْ اخْتَطَفَ, “had carried
 off.” لَعَلَّهُ, “perhaps it is.” لَطَمَ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ, “beat upon
 his head.” يَا قَوْمَ, “O ye people!” لَيْسَ بِعَجَبٍ, “It
 is not strange.” فَيْلٌ, pl. of فَيْلَةٌ, “Elephants.”
 أَكَلْتُ حَدِيدَكَ, “I have misappropriated thy iron.”
 ثَمَرٌ, pl. of ثَمَرَانٌ, “The price of a thing sold”: قِيَمَةٌ is “the
 value or worth of a thing.” رَدَّ عَلَى, “To return,
 restore, to.”

¹ Prop. “in a part of the following day.”

IV.—THE COCK AND THE HAWK.

- 3 ^{صَقْرٌ} صَقْرٌ, pl. ^{صُقُورٌ} صُقُورٌ, “The Hawk”; more particularly, “the Saker: the *charkh* of India.” ^{أَعْطَحَبَا} أَعْطَحَبَا, original form ^{أَصْنَحَبَا} أَصْنَحَبَا, “They (two) associated, kept company, or consorted, with one another.” ^{مُدَّةً} مُدَّةً, “for some time.” ^{أَقْلَ وَفَاءً} أَقْلَ وَفَاءً, “One day,” “more ungrateful.”¹ ^{أَضِيعَ لِحُقُوقِ الصُّحْبَةِ} أَضِيعَ لِحُقُوقِ الصُّحْبَةِ, “more neglectful, or unmindful, of the dues or just claims of fellowship” : ^{أَضَاعَ} أَضَاعَ “To lose”; also, “to neglect, be unmindful of.” ^{مَعَاشِرَ الدِّيَكَةِ} مَعَاشِرَ الدِّيَكَةِ “O ye cocks !” ^{مَعَاشِرُ} مَعَاشِرُ pl. of ^{مَعَشَرٌ} مَعَشَرٌ.² ^{أَنْكَرَ} أَنْكَرَ “To disapprove” : ^{أَنْكَرَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ} أَنْكَرَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ “He disapproved his conduct ; deemed it evil.” ^{يَنْفِرُ} يَنْفِرُ (with مِنْ) “To flee, run away.” ^{يَفِرُّ} يَفِرُّ “To shrink from ; to shun, avoid.” ^{الوَاحِدَ مِنَّا} الْوَاحِدَ مِنَّا “one of our race” : ^{وَاحِدًا مِنَّا} وَاحِدًا مِنَّا would mean “one only.” ^{يَخِيطُ} يَخِيطُ, ^{خَاطَ} خَاطَ “To saw, stitch together.” ^{مَنْعَهُ الشَّيْءَ} مَنْعَهُ الشَّيْءَ, “He refused him the thing ; he withheld it from him.” ^{إِلَى حَيْثُ} إِلَى حَيْثُ “whither they cannot get at him any longer ;

¹ Lit. “of less gratitude; more wanting in gratitude or fidelity.”

² *Ma'shar*, which is a collective noun, as well as its pl. *ma'ashir*, may be used to mean, “Any company, or collective body, whose state of circumstances is one ; a community.”

beyond their reach and power." مُسْرِعًا, "quickly ; *lit.* making haste." يَبْقِذُ الصَّيْدَ وَالطَّيْرَ, "captures birds and other game." فَمَحَكَ, inf. n. مَضَحَكَ, "To laugh." أَيَّاهُ, "Loud." أَمْضَحَكَ, "To make to laugh." أَيْنَاهَا, (fem. أَيْنَاهَا), "O !" ¹ غُرُورٌ, "Delusion" أَمَّا, "Truly, indeed ; why (emphatic)." ² عَيْنَيْنِ, "To see with, or before, the eyes." جَنْسٌ, "Kind ; race." سَلَخَ جِلْدَهُ, "He stripped off its skin ; he skinned it." أَعْنَاقُ, pl. of عُنُقٌ, "Necks." يَقْلِي, from قَلَى, يَقْلُونَ, "To fry." قَدُورٌ, pl. of قَدِيرٌ (fem.), "Cooking-pots." أَشَدَّ الْفَرَارِ, "with all haste ; in double quick time." وَلَمْ يَسْتَقِرَّ الْخَ, "nor wouldst thou have had any rest in their company ; or, endured being with them." قَرَّ قَرَارَهُ, "To become at rest ; *lit.* his rest had being (استقر=قر)." جَوَالِ السَّمَاءِ, "The region between the heaven and the earth ; the vault of the sky" جَوٌّ, "Air ; atmosphere." عَرَفَ, "To recognize ; perceive ; see." أَقْلَعَ (with عَنْ), "To desist from."

¹ *Ayyuhā*, to which *yā* may also be prefixed, always comes before a vocative defined by the article.

² Used to draw close attention to the certainty of the following assertion.

5.—THE SAND-GROUSE AND THE CROW.

فِي حَفْرَةٍ "Had a quarrel, or dispute, with." تَنَازَعَ مَعَ
 "about a pit": حَفْرَةٌ, pl. حُفَرٌ (= حَفِيرَةٌ, pl. حَفَائِرٌ).¹ ادَّعَى
 "To claim." مِلْكٌ and مِلْكٌ, pl. أَمْلاكٌ, "Property."
 تَحَاكَمَا إِلَى, "They went together before, they appealed
 to, the judge." طَلَبَ بَيِّنَةً, "He asked for a clear
 evidence or proof." فَلَمْ يَكُنْ لِأَحَدِهِمَا الْحَقُّ, "but neither had
 any evidence to offer." حَكَمَ لَهُ بِكَذَا "He awarded such
 a thing to him; adjudged it to be his." وَالْحَالُ "when
 in fact." مَا دَعَاكَ, "belonged to." كَانَتْ لِي, "What led
 or induced, thee?" مَا الَّذِي آثَرْتَ بِهِ الْحَقَّ, "What is it that
 made thee prefer my claim to that of the crow?"² عَنْكَ
 حَتَّى ضَرَبُوا بِصِدْقِكَ "as being characteristic of thee."
 أَلَمْ تَلِ, "so much so that they have made thy truthfulness
 the subject of a proverb." أَصْدَقُ مِنْ قَطَاةٍ, "More
 veracious than a *qaṭāt*"³ عَلَى مَا ذَكَرْتَ "as thou
 sayest." مَا حَمَلَكَ عَلَى الْحَقِّ, "a good quality." خَلَّةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ

¹ "A hole or cavity in the ground, whether natural or made by digging": from *ḥafara*, "to dig, or hollow out the ground."

² i.e., made him believe the one rather than the other.

³ "More veracious than a *qaṭāt*": because this bird cries *qaṭā, qaṭā*, thus telling where it is to be found; its name being imitative of its cry.

“What made thee prefer such a false claim?” ^{سورة}
 الْغَضَبِ, “The vehemence, or overpowering influence, of anger.”
 لِكُونِهِ مَذْعَنِي النِّم, “inasmuch as he did not allow 4
 me to drink from it.” الرَّجُوعُ إِلَى الْحَقِّ النِّم, “To return to the truth is better than persisting in falsehood.”
 وَلَئِنْ تَبَقَّى النِّم, “And, indeed, the preservation of such a name is better to me, etc.”—a variant, وَلَكِنْ تَبَقَّ

6.—THE YOUTH AND THE FOX.

أَغْنِيَاءُ, pl. of غَنِيٌّ “Rich.” نَجِيبٌ, “of noble character; intelligent.” صَرَفَهُ فِي التِّجَارَةِ, “whom he brought up to commerce; trained in the ways of business.”
 رَفِيٍّ بِخُبْرَتِهِ فِيهَا, “He was satisfied with his knowledge of it.” بَلَغَ¹ أَشَدَّهُ, “He attained the vigour of life or maturity (in age or mind).” أَنْ يَعُودَهُ عَلَى, “to accustom, or habituate, him to.” تِجَارَةُ الْأَقْطَارِ, “Commerce of

¹ *Ashudd* (originally *ashdud*) is a sing. having a pl. form: or a pl. having no proper singular. It means, “The state of strength, from eighteen to thirty; soundness of judgment produced by experience.”

different countries; foreign commerce.” عَلَى مَسِيرَةِ أَيَّامٍ
 “at a distance of some days’ journey.” مَوْجٌ, pl. of مَوْجٌ
 “A meadow, or pasture-land.” مُقَمَّرَةٌ, “bright (with
 light of the moon). بَصَرَ (with ب), “He saw.” طَرِيعٌ
 “lying prostrate on the ground.” وَتَدَّ أَخَذَهُ, “overcome,
 overpowered by.” الْهَرَمُ وَالْإِعْيَاءُ, “old age and fatigue.”
 كَيْفَ يَرْزُقُ الْغَنَمَ, “was too feeble to move.”
 “How can this poor animal provide himself with the
 means of subsistence? How is he to get his living?”
 إِلَّا أَنَّهُ, “but that.” مُقْبِلٌ, “approaching.” اِنْفَتَرَسَ, “To
 seize as prey.” فَرِيسَةٌ, “The prey of a lion or other
 beast.” تَعَامَلَ, “He ate, or devoured, parts of it.”
 عَلَى نَفْسِهِ, “To constrain one’s self to do a thing, notwith-
 standing difficulty, or trouble.” اِنْتَهَى إِلَى, “came up
 to.” صُنِعَ اللَّهُ فِي خَلْقِهِ, “the doings of God with his
 creatures.” سَأَى, “To send.” فِي نَفْسِهِ, “in his mind;
 within himself.” سُبْحَانَهُ, “Praise be to Him.” تَكَفَّلَ
 (with ب of the thing), “To guarantee; undertake.”
 فَلَايَ شَيْءٍ الْغَمَ, “Why then endure hardships and under-

take journeys, etc. ? ” *مَشَاقُ*, pl. of *مَشَقَّةٌ*. *إِذْتَحَمَ*, “To undertake an enterprise in a headlong or impetuous manner.” *إِذْتَحَمُ الْأَخْطَارَ*, “The rushing headlong into dangers.” *إِنْتَنَى*, “He turned back.” *مَا ثَنَى عَزَمَهُ عَنِ السَّفَرِ*, “What diverted him from his purpose of making the journey.” *بُنَى*, *يَا بُنَيَّ* or *يَا بُنْيَ*, “O my dear son”: dimin. of *ابْنٌ*, with the *ي* of the 1st p. sing. *أَخْطَأْتَ*, “Thou hast missed the point.” *النَّظَرُ* means “The judging of what is hidden from what is apparent.” *أَدَى إِلَيَّ*, *أَرَدْتُ بِكَ أَنْ تَكُونَ*, “I intended thee to be.” aor. *يَأْوِي*, “To betake one’s self, repair, or resort to one.” *جِيعَ*, pl. of *جَائِعٌ* and *جَرَعَانٌ*, “Hungry.” *تَنْتَظِرُ فَضْلَةَ السَّبَاعِ*, “looking, or waiting, for the leavings of lions”: *فَضْلَةٌ*, “A portion remaining of a thing, such as food, etc.” *وَرَجَعَ لِمَا كَانَ فِيهِ*, “and returned to what he was doing; resumed his journey.”

7.—THE SPARROW AND THE SNARE.

1. "Why do I see thee...? How is it that thou...?" تَبَاعَدَ, "To withdraw one's self to a distance or far away." — أَرَدْتُ الْعِزَّةَ الْغَىَّ, "I desired, or chose, to live apart from men; to withdraw myself from association with them." لَأَمِّنَ مِنْهُمْ, "that I may be safe from them; out of harm's way." مَقِيمًا فِي التَّرَابِ, "living on the bare ground." تَوَاضَعًا (acc. of reason or cause), "from
 5 humility." نَاحِلَ الْجَسَمِ, "lean; thin; wanting flesh." عَاتِقُ, "The shoulder; or the part between the shoulder-joint and the neck." مَلْبَسُ النَّسَاكِ, "the livery of hermits": أَتَوَكَّأُ عَلَيْهَا, pl. of نَاسِكٌ—عَصَا, fem., "Staff; stick." قَمْحٌ, "I support, or stay, myself upon it." قَمْحٌ, "Grain of wheat." نَضْلٌ = نَضْلَةٌ, "A portion remaining." يَبْدُو أَعَدَّ, "Food; or food sufficient to sustain life." قُوَّتُ, "To provide; prepare; keep ready." ابْنُ سَبِيلٍ مُنْقَطِعٍ, "any traveller that is cut off from his property or from

the caravan.”¹ **فَهَلْ لَكَ أَنْ تُطْعِمَنِي** “Wouldst thou then give me some to eat?” **دُونَكَ** “Take thou!” **أَلْقَى**, prop. “To cast; throw”; here, “To put forth; thrust out.” **مِنْقَارٌ**, “A beak”: **نَقَرَ**, “To peck; pick.” **بِدُسٍّ مَا أَخَذْتَ لِنَفْسِكَ**, “Evil indeed is the course thou hast adopted, or chosen for thyself.” **مِنْ** expletive. **خَدِيعَةٌ**, “Deceit; guile.” **الْشَّنِيعَةُ** “Abominable qualities; evil habits.” ... **لَمْ يَشْعُرْ إِلَّا وَ** “Before he knew anything; all of a sudden” **أَمْسَكَهُ = قَبَضَ عَلَيْهِ**, “He laid hold of him; seized him with his hand.” **بِحَقِّ الْغَمِّ**, “Rightly have the learned said.” **مَنْ تَهَوَّرَ نَدِمَ**, “He who acts with rashness is bound to repent.” **حَذَرَ**, “To be cautious, wary.” **كَيْفَ لِي بِالْخَلَّاصِ**, “How can I effect my escape?” **وَلَاتَ حِينَ مَنَاصٍ**,² Qur. xxxviii, 2, “when it is no time to escape; i.e., when it is physically impossible, or too late.” **مَنَاصٍ** is from the root **نَاصَ**, “To retreat;

¹ Or, “disabled from proceeding on his journey, his means having failed him.”

² *Lāta* is used before nouns denoting time, and like *laisa* governs the predicate, which alone is mentioned, in the accusative.

fly; escape.” حَدَّثَتْهُ نَفْسُهُ بِ, “His mind suggested to him.”
 حِيلَةٌ: inf. n. of اِحْتَالَ, “To exercise cunning.” اِحْتِيَالٌ,
 “A stratagem; ruse.” فِي مَضِيقِ الْأَحْوَالِ, “in a strait.”
 اِلْتَفَتَ, “He turned to.” مَا تَشَاءُ, “what thou wilt.”
 وَلَا أُغْنِي مِنْ جُوعٍ, “nor can I afford satisfaction from
 hunger.” كَلِمَاتٌ مِنَ الْحِكْمِ, “Words of wisdom.” أَمَلٌ,
 “The root or foot (of a tree, etc.)” إِذَا صِرْتُ, “when
 I am” : صَارَ “To get to; reach.” مَا حَيَّيْتُ,
 “As long as thou livest.” فَانْتِ, “A thing lost,
 gone beyond reach (= spilt milk).” لَا يَكُونُ, “Not
 possible from the nature of things.” هَاتِ, an interj.,
 originally Imperative, “Give here !” هَاتِ مَا عِنْدَكَ,
 “Say what thou hast to say.” أَشَقَى, elative of
 شَقِي, “Unfortunate; unlucky.” ظَفِرْتَ بِغَنَّاكَ,
 “Thou didst get hold of what was a fortune to thee.”
 وَوَلَدِكَ, “and thy children.” فِي أَيَسْرَ وَقْتٍ¹, “in a mo-
 ment; in no time.” حَوْمَلَةٌ, “The stomach or crop of a

¹ *Walad* and its cognate forms *wuld*, *wild* and *wald*, are used alike as sing. and pl., masc. and fem.

bird." *زِنَةٌ*, "two ruby gems." *جَوْهَرَتَيْنِ مِنَ الْيَاقُوتِ*,
 "Weight": from *وَزَنَ* "To weigh," *اعْتَرَاهُ الْأَسَفُ*, "He
 was smitten by grief": *اعْتَرَى*, "To befall; come upon."
 6 *وَأَنْتَ لَوْ وَزَنْتَنِي*, "In the twinkling of an eye," *فِي لَحْظَةٍ*,
 "when if thou wert to weigh me." *جَوْفٌ*, "The belly
 or abdomen." *يَفِيْ*, "To equal; come to." *إِطْلَاقٌ*,
 "Setting loose; letting go." *فَارَقَ شَرَكَّهُ*, "He escaped
 out of his snare."

8.—THE PIGEON, THE FOX AND THE HERON.

يَرَى الرَّأْيَ "who reasons; chooses the right course." *مَالِكُ الْحَزِينِ*, "The Heron."¹
كَانَتْ تُفَرِّخُ, "used to hatch, produce her young."² *ذُرْوَةٌ*, "The top of a tree, mountain, etc."
بَاسِقَةٌ فِي السَّمَاءِ, "Lofty; rising high in the air."
جَمَعَ عَشَّهَا, "to gather (the materials of) her nest."
لَا يَتِمُّ لَهَا ذَلِكَ الْخَمْرُ, "she could only do so; the task was only accomplished." *سَحَرٌ*,

¹ *Mālik* is the angel who is said to preside over hell. The name *Sorrowful Mālik* was given to the heron, as this bird was believed to stop near dried-up watercourses, grieving over them and not touching water till it dies.

² "Hatching," here, includes the nesting and the laying of the eggs.

prop. ^{سَعَقٌ}, "Great height." ^{حَضَنَ}, "To sit on eggs (a bird)." ^{فَقَسَ} or ^{فَقَصَ}, "To hatch eggs; break them for the young to emerge." ^{وَأَدْرَكَتْ}, ^{فِرَاخَهَا}, "and her young were fully grown or developed." ^{قَدْ تَعَاهَدَ النِّحْ}, "who knew, from experience, the exact time she had her young." ^{فَيَقِفُ}, "and take his stand." ^{أَوْعَدَ}, ^{صَاحَ بِ}, "To call, cry out to." ^{يُوعِدُ}, "To threaten." ^{يَرْقَى}, ^{رَقِيَ}, "To ascend." ^{وَقَعَ عَلَى}, "To alight, perch on." ^{كَئِيبَةً}, "in grief; sorrowful." ^{كَاسَفَةُ اللَّوْنِ}, "gloomy; with cloudy looks." ^{لَوْنٌ}, "Aspect." ^{دُهَيْتُ بِهِ}, "who has been the bane of my life; the plague of my days." ^{كَانَ لِي}, "I have." ^{يَفْرُقُ}, ^{فَرَّقَ}, "To become frightened." ^{فَارَّقَ إِلَيَّ}, "Do thou ascend where I am." ^{لَقَنَ}, "To endanger one's self." ^{غَرَّرَ بِنَفْسِهِ}, "To instruct; tutor; teach." ^{تَوَجَّهَ}, "To go; set out." ^{إِذَا أَتَتْكَ الرِّيحُ النِّحْ}, "when the wind assails thee on thy right." ^{عَنْ شِمَالِي}, "to my left." ^{إِسْتَطَاعَ},

¹ Lit. "with whom I have been smitten as with a calamity."

“To be able.” مَا أَرَاهُ يَتَّيَّأُ لَكَ, “I do not think it is possible for thee to do this.” أَرِنِي, “Show me.” فَضَّلَكُمُ عَلَيْنَا, “By my life, or religion.” لَعَمْرِي, “has favoured you above us; has endowed you with superior qualities.” تَدْرِي, “You learn, master.” وَتَبْلُغُ, “and you achieve, accomplish, contrive to do.” فَهَنَيْتُنَا لَكِنَّ, a congratulatory expression. “You are lucky indeed!” هَمَزَهُ, “He squeezed him.” دَقَّ فُؤَادَهُ, “crushed his heart.” يَا عَدُوَّ نَفْسِهِ, “Thou fool! Enemy to thy (*lit.* his) own self!” وَتَعَجَّزُ عَنْ مِثْلِ ذَلِكَ, “and yet art unable to do the same.” اِسْتَمَنَّ مِنْ, “To have one in his clutches.”

9.—THE HORSE AND THE HOG.

شَجَاعٌ, pl. of شَجَاعٌ “A brave, courageous man; a warrior.” وَكَانَ يُكْرِمُهُ, “He treated him well.” وَلاَ يَصْبِرُ عَلَيْهِ سَاعَةً, “and he served him well.” وَوَعْدَهُ, “and he couldn't lose sight of him for a while.” لِمِهْمَاتِهِ, “He had set him apart for service in matters of great importance, or in emergencies”: أَعَدَّ, *trans.* “To

keep ready." غَدَاةٌ, "Morning." فَيَنْزِلُ عَنْهُ, "He would take from him." وَيُطِيلُ رَسَنَهُ, "and give him long rope." اسْتَقَرَّتْ, "To wallow; roll in the dust." تَمَرَّغَ, "settled; rested." نَفَرَ, inf. n. نَفُورٌ and نِفَارٌ, "ran away, or broke loose." جَمَعَ, inf. n., جَمَاحٌ and جُمُوحٌ, "became refractory, ungovernable." وَمَرَّ يَعْذُو, "and rushed past." يَوْمَهُ كُلَّهُ, "all that day." نَاجَزَهُ, "but he defeated all his efforts to capture him." وَلَمَّا انْقَطَعَ الطَّلَبُ عَنِ الْفَرَسِ الْغَنِي, "When all pursuit had stopped and night came on, the horse began to feel hungry." رَاَمَ, "To wish; desire." رِكَابٌ, "Stirrup": بَاتَ بِشَرِّ لَيْلَةٍ — رِكَابَاتٍ. pl. رُكْبٍ; mod. colloq. pl. فَرَجًا مِمَّا هُوَ فِيهِ, "He passed a most miserable night." اِعْتَرَضَهُ, "stood in his way." بَعِيدُ الْقَعْرِ, "To cross." قَطَعَ, "deep; having a far bottom." لَمْ يَبَالِغْ فِي دَبْنِهِ, "not thoroughly tanned." أَصَابَتِ الشَّمْسُ الْحِزَامَ, "the sun's rays beat upon the girth." وَاشْتَدَّ عَلَيْهِ, "and pressed painfully upon him." مَعَ الْخِ, "distress." ضَرَرٌ, "besides; in addition

to." هَمَّ بِقَتْلِهِ, "To remain; continue." يَلْبَثُ, لَبِثَ, "purposed to kill him." عَظَفَ عَلَيْهِ, "felt compassion for him." لَمَّا رَأَى بِهِ الضَّعْفَ, "seeing that he was so weak." مِنْ إِضْرَارِ الضَّ, "of the suffering which the bridle, the saddle and the girth were causing him." إِضْرَارٌ, inf. n. of أَضَرَّ, "To give physical pain to." مِمَّا ابْتَلَى بِهِ, "to do him a favour, or kind act." عِنْدَهُ مَعْرُوفًا, "the trouble with which he has been afflicted." اسْتَحَقَّ, أَنْتَ كَاذِبٌ, "To merit; deserve." زَعَمَ, "To say; allege." جُرْمٌ, "Thou liest." مَا يَنْبَغِي لِي أَنْ, "It is my duty not to; it is not meet that I should." أُنْقِصَ عَنْكَ خِثَاً, "ease or relieve thee of thy burden": خِثَاً literally means "A bow-string (for strangling)." وَلَا اتَّخَذَكَ وَلِيًّا, "nor adopt thee as a friend." وَلَا اَلْتَمِسُ الْخَ, "nor seek (by rendering thee a favour) to earn thy gratitude, or (by doing good to thee) to win a reward from Heaven." مُقَارَنَةً, "To steal; receive, take in, imbibe." وَأَنْتَ لَا تَشْعُرُ, "imperceptibly; without

knowing it.” لَا تَطْعَ فِي اسْتِصْلَاحِ الرَّذْلِ, “Do not seek

to reform a corrupt man ; or hope that he will mend.”

اسْتَوْجَبَ, “For thy sake ; for regard of thee.” مِنْ أَجْلِكَ

“To deserve ; merit.” أَمَرَ عَلَيْهَا, “persists in them.”

وَلَمْ يَرْجُ فَلَاحَهُ, “and his moral reform is hopeless.”

يَزْهَدُ, “To be backward, slow ; hold back ; be

disinclined.” فَإِنَّ الدَّهْرَ ذُو صُرُوفٍ, “for fortune has its

vicissitudes ; is full of change.” يَتَخَيَّرُ لِمَعْرُوفِهِ, “selects

fit objects for his kindness.” الْبَادِرُ, “The sower.”

مَا كَانَ زَاكِيًا = مَا زَكَ, “such as is fertile, productive.”

وَعَنِ ابْتِدَاءِ أَمْرِكَ فِيمَا نَزَلَ بِكَ, “as to how this misfortune

first befell thee.” مِنْ أَيْنَ أُتَيْتَ, “what lies at the root

of thy affliction ; what didst thou to merit this punish-

ment.” خَذَلْنَاكَ فَارْسَاكَ, “Desertion of thy master,

lit. rider.” كَفَرْتُ لِإِحْسَانِهِ, “Ingratitude, or making ill

returns for his kindness.” إِضْرَارَكَ بِهِ الْخُ, “Causing him

the trouble and worry of a pursuit.” تَعَدَّيْتُكَ عَلَى

عَدَّةٍ, “Acting wrongfully in respect of ; stealing.”

بِتَعَاطِيكَ التَّوْحَشَ, “Equipage ; harness ; accoutrement.”

“Attempting to live like, affecting the life of, a wild animal.” لَا تَكْ عَلَيَّ مَقْدَرَةٌ, “Not fitted for.” لَيْسَ أَهْلًا, “and which thou canst not endure.” وَتَمَادِيكَ فِي غَوَايَتِكَ, “and persevering in thy error, or evil course.” وَالِاسْتَقَالَةَ مِنْ فَارِطٍ جَهْلِكَ, “and to ask forgiveness for the wrong thou hast inadvertently done.” أَمَّا إِذَا بِالضَّبْطِ, “To weaken.” يَوْهِنُ, أَوْهِنُ, “by its grip.” أَيْقَظُهُ, “Now that.” ذَهَلَ عَنْ, “He awakened him; roused his attention.” “To forget; be unmindful of.” مَحْجُوبًا بِعِجَابِ الْجَهْلِ, “curtained by the veil of ignorance.” أَضْعَافُ, pl. of ضَعْفُ, “Many times as much.” حَقِيقٌ بَأَن يَفْرَجَ عَنْكَ, “To perceive.” وَفِطْنٍ لِ, “worthy, 9 deserving, of being relieved.”

10.—THE BIRDS AND BEASTS AND HOW THEY ARE TREATED BY MAN.

سَالَفٌ, “Man, *lit.*, the son of Adam.” ابْنُ آدَمَ, “Gone before; past.” يَأْوِي, أَوَى, “To resort to; lodge; abide.” مِنْ سَائِرِ الْوَحُوشِ, “infested with lions.”¹ كَثِيرِ السِّبَاعِ

¹ *Sabu'*, of which *Sibā'* is the pl., means “Any animal of prey, whether beast or bird”; at the present day, it is applied particularly to the lion.

“of all kinds of wild beasts.” يَاوَيَانَ لَيْلًا, “roosted by night.” وَيَغْدُرَانِ مِنِّي طَلَبِ الرِّزْقِ, “went forth in quest of food”: غَدَا “To go forth early in the morning, in the first part of the day.” بَغَى, فَتَشَّ عَلَى, غَيْرَ, “other than.” وَيَبْغِي, “To seek.” وَهِيَ فِي شِدَّةِ الْفَزَعِ, “To search for.” يَسْعَى, “To go along quickly.” فَالْحَذَرُ ثُمَّ الْحَذَرُ, “when she felt secure.” فَاطْمَأْنَنْتِ, “now that.” حَيْثُ, “beware, and again I say beware.” لَا بَأْسَ عَلَيْكَ¹, “Welcome!” أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا وَمَرْحَبًا, “fear not!”² لَا يُمْكِنُ, “it is not possible.” وَنَحْنُ, “and we; when we are.” طَوَّلَ عُمُرِي, فَابْشِرِي, “so be of good cheer.” طَوَّلَ عُمُرِي, “all my life.” لَا أَرَى مَكْرُوهًا, “seeing nothing disagreeable; meeting with no ill.” سَمِعْتُ قَائِلًا الْخَ, “I heard a voice say to me.” وَلَا بَمَا يُدْخِلُهُ عَلَيْكَ, “nor by what he may suggest to thee.” يَحْتَالُ عَلَى الْحَيْثَانِ³, “circumvents

¹ The literal meaning of these words is, “Thou hast come to people like thine own kinsfolk, not strangers, and to a place that is plain, even, not rugged, and that is ample or roomy; therefore be cheerful, not sad or shy.”

² Lit. “There is no fear for thee,” i.e., there is no cause for fear. Said to an enemy, it implies the granting of security or protection; to a friend, reassurance.

³ Lit. “tries to put into thy head.”

the fish " : ^{حَيْثَانُ}, pl. of ^{حَوْتٌ} — ^{بِبَنْدَقَةٍ مِنْ طِينٍ} " with a pellet of clay." ^{وَرَبْعٌ} " and traps." ^{بَلَّغْتُكَ} " I have told thee." ^{إِلَى الْآنَ} " to this hour." ^{لَا يَنْشَرِحُ صَدْرِي} " my heart is depressed, knows no gladness": ^{إِنْشِرَاحُ الصَّدرِ} means " The dilation of the heart with happiness." ^{لَعَلَّ يَدْهَمَنِي} " lest he surprise me unawares." ^{وَلَمْ يَأْتِ عَلَيَّ الْغَمُّ} — ^{حِبَالُهُ} " in his snares " : pl. of ^{بِعَبَائِلِهِ} " By the time the evening came." ^{بَطَلْتُ هَمَّتِي} " my energy failed; I was spiritless." ^{إِشْتَقَ إِلَى} " To feel a desire to." ^{مَقْبُوضٌ} " Depressed; ill at ease " : *lit.* " contracted." ^{وَكُونِي لَطِيفَةً} " A young lion." ^{أَشْبَالُ}, pl. of ^{شَبْلٌ} " and what is thy kind, or race." ^{وَمَا جِئُوكَ} " has been for days, etc." ^{إِنِّي قَدْ لَجَأْتُ إِلَيْكَ فِي أَنْ الْغَمُّ} " the like of." ^{نَظِيرَ} " I appeal to thee to" ^{جَزَمَ الرَّأْيَ} " To resolve; make a determined effort." ^{وَزَادَتْ خَوْفًا عَلَى خَوْفِي} " and my fear has redoubled." ^{مَعَ أَنَّكَ} " albeit

¹ Particularly applied to " A large fish, a whale."

² An allusion to the stone-bow.

³ *Lit.* " and my being graceful in form."

- thou art.” وَأَوْصِيَهُ بِقَتْلِهِ, “and to urge him to slay him.” مِنْ رِقْتِهِ وَسَاعِدِهِ, “forthwith; straightway.” فَرَقَعَ بِذَنْبِهِ, “lashed [flanks] with tail.”¹ مَفْرُقُ الطَّرِيقِ, “The parting of the way; the cross-roads.” فَوَجَدْنَا غَبْرَةً طَارَتْ, “and saw a cloud of dust arise.” اِنْكَشَفَتْ, “cleared away.” يَبِينُ, بَانَ, “To appear.” شَارِدٌ, “runaway.” يَقْمُصُ, قَمَصَ, “To canter; gallop.” تَارَةً...وَتَارَةً, “Now...now.” يَجْرِي, جَرَى, “To run.” خَاضِعًا, “submissively.” هَرَبَنِي, 11 خَرِفَ الْعَقْلَ, “Crack-brained; crazy; dotard.” هَرَبَ, “is that I am fleeing”: inf. n. of هَرَبَ “To flee; run away.” ثَفْرٌ, “A pad, panel; pack-saddle.” بَرْدَعَةٌ, “A crupper.” لِحَامٌ, “Bit.” مِئْخَاسٌ, “A goad”: n. of INSTR. from نَخَسَ, “To goad.” وَيَكْلِفُنِي النِّعَمَ, “and he makes me run more than my strength”: كَلَّفَ, “To impose; enforce.” أَطَاقُ الشَّيْءَ, “To be able to do the thing.” يَنْهَقُ نَهَقًا, “To bray.” إِذَا كَبُرْتُ, “when I grow old.” رَحْلًا مِنَ الْخَشَبِ, “a wooden saddle.”

¹ The proper meaning of *farqa'a* is, “To produce a sound” by cracking the joints of the fingers, striking two things against each other, or otherwise.

وَيَسْلِمُنِي إِلَى السَّقَاتِينِ, "and delivers me to the water-carriers." فِي الْقِرْبِ, "in skins": pl. of قِرْبَةٌ "A water-skin." وَنَعْوَهَا, "and similar things." جَرَارٌ, pl. of جَرَّةٌ "A jar." فِي ذُلٍّ وَهَوَانٍ, "in misery and abasement." مُصِيبَةٌ¹, "on the rubbish-heaps." فَوْقَ التَّلَالِ, pl. مَصَائِبُ, "Calamity." اِشْعَرَجَسِدِي, "my flesh quaked; my hair stood on end." مَعْدُورٌ, "has excuse; is to be excused." رُعْبٌ, "Terror." وَهَا أَنَا الْخَمَّ, "and now, etc." غَدَارٌ, "Perfidious." أَن يودَعَنَا, "to bid us farewell." وَبَعْدَ سَاعَةٍ, "in the direction of the dust." إِلَى نَاحِيَةِ الْغُبَةِ, "After a while." أَدْهَمَ, "black (a horse)." بَغْرَةٌ كَالدِّرْهَمِ, "with a dirham-like blaze² on his forehead." ظَرِيفٌ, "beautiful with the white spot on his forehead." الْغُرَّةُ, "handsomely marked with white about the hoof." حَسَنُ الْقَوَائِمِ وَالصَّهِيدِ, "having firm strong legs and neighing loudly." بَيْنَ يَدَيِ الشَّبَلِ, "before the young lion." اِسْتَعْظَمَهُ, "He regarded him with

¹ Mounds of rubbish close to the walls of a town.

² i.e., round and bright like a silver coin.

- admiration." جَلِيلٌ, "Majestic." شَرَدَ, inf. n. of شَرْدَ, "To run away at random." فَانَّهُ عَيْبٌ عَلَيْكَ, "for it is
 12 shame to thee." وَأَنْتَ, "seeing that thou art." غَلِيظٌ, "Stout." مَعَ عِظَمِ جُتَّتِكَ, "with thy bulk of body." فَابْطِشَ بِهِ, "to attack him." سَكَنَ رَوْعَهُ, "He appeased his terror." وَأَقْرَهَا, "and make her dwell in peace." وَهَآ, "But now." قَطَعْتَ قَلْبِي, "Thou hast disheartened me; made me lose courage." وَأَرْجَعْتَنِي عَنْ, "and turned me back from." قَدْ قَهَرَكَ, "has mastered thee." مَعَ أَنَّ, "though." رِجْلٌ, "Foot"; here for حَافِرٌ, "Hoof." كَأْسَ الرَّدَى, "the cup of death." هَيْهَاتَ هَيْهَاتَ, "Far, far is it from my power." وَلَا ضَخَامَتِي, "nor my bulk." مَعَ, "with respect to." شُكْلٌ, pl. شَكَالٌ, "Hobbles." لَيْفٌ, "Palm-fibres." الْمَلْفُوفَةُ بِاللَّبَادِ, "bound with felt." وَيَصْلِبُنِي, "and gibbets me; attaches or fastens me." وَأَنَا مَصْلُوبٌ, "tied up." فِي وَتْدٍ عَالٍ, "to a high stake." مِنْ تَحْتِ إِبْطِي¹, "under my armpits." صُرْعٌ, "Rein." وَيَهْمِزُ هَمَزًا, "and guides me with it." وَ يَقُودُنِي بِهِ

¹ *Ibt.*, "Armpit," is applied in Arabic both to man and beast.

goad ; spur." خَوَاصِرُ, pl. of خَامِرَةٌ, "Flanks." اِدْمِي, اِدْمِي
 "To make to bleed." وَانْتَحَلَ ظَهْرِي, lit. "and my back
 has grown thin." طَحَانُ, "Miller." اِيْدِرْنِي فِي الطَّاحُونَةِ
 "to employ me in turning the mill." دَائِرًا, "turning":
 from دَارُ, يَدُورُ, "To move or turn round." يَهْرُمُ, يَهْرُمُ
 "To grow old and decrepit." جَزَارُ, "Butcher." يَنْتِفُ ذَنْبِي,
 "and plucks out my tail." لِلْعَرَابِيِّ وَالْمَنَاحِلِيِّ
 "to the sieve-makers." وَيَسْلُ شَحْمِي, "and
 he melts down my fat." وَهُوَ فِي اَثَرِي, "and he is
 upon my track ; following hard upon me." نَارَتْ, "rose."
 "To utter a gurgling noise." يَبْعَبُ, يَبْعَبُ, "a furious camel." جَمَلٌ هَائِجٌ
 "To beat violently ; stamp ; paw." يَخْبِطُ, يَخْبِطُ, "but he is a camel." 13
 وَمَا هَذَا جَمَلٌ, "and he seems to be fleeing." مَعَ عَظْمٍ
 لَهُ دَرَاهُ لَا تَطَاقُ "with thy huge frame, or make." خَلَقْتَكَ
 "has wiles which none can withstand": دَرَاهُ, pl. of
 دَاهِيَةٌ, lit. "Calamities." يَغْلِبُ, غَابَ, "To overcome ;

¹ Lit. "to make me turn in the mill.

² *Munkhul* is especially applied to a fine sieve. Note.—The pl. of *ghirbāl* is *gharābil* : it is here changed to *gharābil*, with short i, to harmonize with *manākhil*.

³ To make candles.

prevail against." أَنْف, pl. أَنْف, "Nose." خِزَام, "A nose-ring." مَقْرَد, "A halter." يَجْرُ, جَرَّ "To draw along." حَمَلَ, "To load." أَحْمَال, pl. of حَمْل "A load; burden." الْأَسْفَارُ الطُّوَالَ, "long journeys." الشَّاقَّةُ, "hard labour." أَنَاءَ اللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ, "through the hours of the night and the day"; أَنَاءَ is pl. of إِنْي and إِنَكَرَ, يَشِينُ, شَاخَ : وَشِخْتُ. إِنْي "To grow old." لَا يَحْفَظُ مَحَبَّتِي "To become disabled." دَبَّاعٌ¹, "He disregards my claims on his consideration." عَنْدَ انْصِرَافِي "Tanner." "about the time of my departure." فَيَسْعَى فِي طَلْبِي "and will hasten in pursuit of me." يَهْجُ, هَجَّ "To flee; scamper." بَرَارِيٌّ², pl. of بَرِيَّةٌ "A desert." قَفَرٌ, pl. of قَفْرٌ "A waste." تَمَهَّلْ قَلِيلًا "Wait a little." رَقِيقَ الْبَشَرَةِ "To break; crush." يَهْشِمُ, هَشَمَ "thin; lean of limb": بَشَرَةٌ, "Epidermis." مَقْطَفٌ, "Basket." عِدَّةُ ذِجَارٍ³, "a set of carpenter's tools." شُعْبَةٌ "a branch of a tree." أَلْوَاحٌ, pl. of لَوْحٌ "Planks." أَقْفَالٌ

¹ For being so long his companion, or for "my long service."

² The exact meaning of *hajja* is, "To run away through fear or some great trouble and wander at large."

pl. of قُلْ, "Locks." وَهُوَ يَمْشِي فِي مَشْيِهِ, "and walking at a quick, steady pace." مَاجِبُ الْبَاعِ الطَّوِيلِ, "lord of the long arm." ¹ أَسْعَدَ مَسْعَاكَ, "may he prosper whatever thou undertakest." مَسْعَى, pl. مَسَاعٍ, "Endeavour; effort." زَادَ فِي, "To increase; add to." يُجِيرُ, أَجَارَ, "To protect; shield; save." يَدْهَى, دَهَى, "To befall; overtake (a calamity, or a distressing event)." ¹⁴ رَمَاهُ بِشَرٍّ, "To oppress, harass or persecute one." نَصِيرًا, "a helper." يَذُنُّ, أَنْ, "To groan": inf. n. أَنْيَنَ. — خَشِيَ, يَخْشَى, "To fear; dread." وَمَا تَكُونُ, "and what art thou?" مَا شَأْنُكَ, "What is thy case, or condition?" ² تَبَدَّلَ الضِّيَاءُ الْحَمِيمُ, "The light was changed to darkness before his face." ³ شَخَرَ وَنَخَرَ, "He growled and snorted." وَارْتَمَتْ عَيْنَاهُ بِالْشَّرَرِ, "and his eyes cast forth sparks of fire." لَأَسْهَرَنَّ, "I will assuredly remain awake." خَطَوَاتُ, pl. of خَطْرَةٌ, "Steps." كَسَرَ بِخَاطِرِهِ, "He hurt his feelings." ذُرٌّ مُرَوَّةٌ, "Generous

¹ Bâ' orig. means, "The arms; and particularly when extended to their full reach": hence, "Reach; power."

² *Shā'n* may also mean "Status; or, position of affairs."

³ i.e., "he was very angry."

of heart.” وَمَاشِي، مَاشِي، “To keep pace with.”

وَالْفَهْدُ، “The lynx”; also, “the Cheetah.”

دَاسَ هَذِهِ الْأَرْضَ، “had set foot in this country.”

وَيَمْنَعُ عَنْهُ عَدُوَّهُ، “and fend off his enemy from him.”

أَخَذَهُ الْحَسَدُ، “To obtain access to; to come at.” وَصَلَ إِلَيَّ،

“He became envious of.” بِحَيَاتِي، “By my life.”

لَا بُدَّ أَنَّ الْخَ، “Thou must; there is no help for it but

thou, etc.” إِلَّا إِذَا، “till.” يُعَصِّنُكَ مِنْ، “that shall

protect thee from”: حَصَّنَ، “To fortify.” مَا أَخْلَيْكَ،

“I will not let thee.” هَمَّ عَلَى، “made for.” يَمْزَحُ وَمَزَحَ،

“To jest.” يَلْطُسُ، لَطَسَ، “To strike; cuff.”

15 يَكْتُمُ، كَتَمَ، “To conceal”;¹ مَغْشِيًّا عَلَيْهِ، “in a swoon.”

كَتَمَ غَيْظَهُ، “He dissembled his wrath.” قَعَدَ عَلَى حَيْلِهِ،

“He sat up.”² هَا، “lo! see! there!” تَنَازَلَ، “He

took.” وَسَمَرَ الْبَيْتَ، “and nailed together the house.”

جَعَلَهُ مِثْلَ الْقَالِبِ الْخَ، “He mould-like.”³ مِثْلَ الْقَالِبِ، lit. “mould-like.”

¹ i.e., “senseless”: *ghushiya* ‘alaihi, “he fainted (lit. there was a covering thrown over him)”; *ghushiya* ‘alaihā, “she fainted”; *ghushiya* ‘alaihim, “they fainted,” etc. As these examples show, in the impersonal form of expression, the third person sing. masc. of the passive verb is used; hence the fem. of *maghshiyyun* ‘alaihi is *maghshiyyun* ‘alaihā, and not *maghshiyyatun* ‘alaihā.

² *Hail* prop. means “strength”; hence, ‘alā *hailihi*, “upright; with the back erect.”

³ i.e., “exactly fitting; like a glove.”

modelled it exactly after the measure of the young lion." طَانَةٌ, "Aperture." غَطَا, "Cover." ثَقَبَ, "To bore holes." ثُقُوبٌ, pl. of ثَقَبَ, "Holes." مَسَامِيرُ مَطْرَنَةٌ, "pointed nails." حَتَّى أَقْبِسَهُ عَلَيْكَ, "that I may fit it to thy measure." يَبْرُكُ, بَرَكَ, "To crouch down." إِمْهَلْ, "Wait." أَنْ يَتَأَخَّرَ إِلَيَّ وَرَأَيْهِ, "to draw back." امْتَدَّلَ أَمْرُهُ, "complied with his directions; did as he bid him." يَلْفُ, لَفَّ, "To fold, twist up." وَحَشَاهُ, "and stuffed it." وَقَعْتَ فِي الْقَفْصِ, "Thou art fallen into the trap."¹ أَقْفَاصٌ, قَفْصٌ, pl. أَقْفَاصُ, "A cage." مَا هَذَا الْخِطَابُ, "What manner of words are these? What is this discourse?" يَا كَلْبَ الْبَرِّ, "O dog of the desert!" وَقَدْ رَمَاكَ الْقَدَرُ, "Fate has smitten thee." وَالْهَائِفُ, "and the mysterious voice." وَفِي الْيَقَظَةِ, "or uncertainty." وَلَا رَيْبَ, "and waited to see." كَبُرَ, "increased; became too great." مَسَلَّكَ, غَايَةُ الْعَجَبِ, "with exceeding wonder." 16

¹ Lit. "Thou art fallen into the cage."

“A way of access.” فَاخْتَارِي الْمَقَامَ عِنْدَنَا “so do thou take up thine abode with us.”¹ وَأَنْ يَطْرُقَنِي طَارِقٌ “lest some calamity come upon me.”² وَالْقَضَاءُ لَا يَنْفِكُ عَنْهُ أَبَقٌ وَيَأْبِقُ، أَبَقٌ “for no runaway can rid himself of fate.”³ وَمَا زَالَتْ بِهَا “He (a slave) ran away from his master.”⁴ وَإِنْ كَانَ عَلَى جَبِينِنَا شَيْءٌ “and ceased not to persuade her.” نَسْتَوْفِيهِ “That which is on our foreheads.”⁵ وَإِنْ كَانَ دَنَا أَجَلُنَا “and when we must indeed fulfil.”⁶ وَلَنْ تَمُوتَ نَفْسٌ نَحْنُ “our doomed day draweth near.” “Not a soul departeth until it hath enjoyed its full measure of livelihood and lived the whole of its term.” مَمَرٌ “Escape ; flight” : from فَرَّ، يَفِرُّ، وَحَذِرَتْ مِنْهُ. “and feared.” الْعَشَائِشُ مِنَ نَبَاتِ الْأَرْضِ “the herbs of the earth.” فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَحِلُّ الْبَدَنَ “so is he.” هُوَ الْآخِرُ “for care

¹ Lit., “so choose [on grounds of safety] to stay with us.”

² *Taraq* generally means “To come by night” : hence, *tāriqun* or *tāriqatun*, “a sudden calamity” ; because accidents, such as floods, etc., are felt most severely when coming in the night.

³ i.e., “no one can run away from fate.”

⁴ Without being induced to do so by fear, or severity of work. In this case the law ordains that the slave shall be restored.

⁵ Lit. “If anything be written on our forehead” : in allusion to man’s unchangeable destinies.

⁶ Lit. “we will receive in full.”

⁷ Lit. “the herbs that the earth brings forth.”

or anxiety wastes the body." فَلَمْ تُتَمِّ الْخِمْ، "Hardly had the peahen done speaking." حَتَّى، "when." يَسْتَظِلُّ، "to shade himself." أَكْثَرَ خِصْبًا، "Shade." ظِلُّ، "more fruitful; richer in herbage." مَسْكَنًا، "as an abode." دَعَاهُمَا دَوْدُدُهُ، "Amity." مُصَافَاةً، "He besought them for." إِلَى، "his friendly behaviour to them." وَتَعَالَفُوا عَلَى ذَلِكَ، "and they slept in one place." وَصَارَ مَبِيتُهُمْ وَاحِدًا، "which had strayed from her course." كَانَتْ تَائِبَةً، "To cast anchor." بِرُسْيٍ، أَرَسَى، "The being together." اجْتِمَاعٌ، "deprived 17 of her reason; confused; bewildered." مَا جَرَى لِ، "I see what had betided." لَا أَرَى الْآفَاتِ إِلَّا مُرَاصِدَةً الْخِمْ، "that misfortunes lie in ambush for all." مِنْ خِيَارِ الْأَمْدِقَاءِ، "one of the truest of friends": خَيْرٌ، pl. of خِيَارٌ، "Good; excellent"; also, "best." وَكَرِهْتُ، "and I loathe." — رَدَّ عَزَمَ الطَّائُوسَةِ الْخِمْ، "dissuaded the peahen from her resolve to depart." وَأَحْذَرَسِي مِنْهُمْ، "and guard thyself from them." قَدْ عَلِمْتُ يَقِينًا، "I am assured." تَرَكَهَا التَّسْبِيحَ

“her neglecting to repeat the praises of God.”¹
 خَلَقَهُ اللهُ, “created by God.” غَفَلَ عَنْ, “To neglect.”
 لَا يَقْدِرُ عَنْهُ سَاعَةً, “and pass. of عَاقَبَ “To punish.”
 ceased not therefrom a single hour.” تَسْبِيحٌ, “Formula
 of praise.” الدَّيَّانُ, “God, the Requiter of every good
 and evil thing.” ذِي الْجَبَرُوتِ, “the Lord of Majesty.”

11. THE PIGEON, THE RAT, THE DEER AND THE CROW.

عِنْدَ, “near.” حَمَامَةٌ مَطْوِقَةٌ, “Ring-dove.”
 يَنْتَازِبُهُ الصَّيَّادُونَ, “abounding in game.” كَثِيرُ الصَّيْدِ,
 “which hunters much resorted to”: اِنْتَابَ: “To
 come time after time”; cf. نَوْبَةٌ, “Time; turn.”
 مَلْتَفَةٌ الرَّقِ, “with luxuriant foliage, or a rich profu-
 sion of leaves; with clustering leaves.” اَوَكَرَ, pl. وَكْرٌ,
 and سَاطِئٌ فِي, “The nest of a bird, wherever it is.” وَكْرٌ,
 “sitting in his nest.” سَيِّءُ الْخُلُقِ, “Ill-natured.”
 اِمَّا حَيْنِي, “To send.” سَاقَ, “was frightened.” دُعِرَ,
 “either my death”: حَيْنٌ, “Death, or time of death.”
 فَلَا أَثْبَتَنَ مَكَانِي, “I will keep my place; remain where I

¹ *Tasbīh*, saying, *Subhān-Allāh*, “Glory to God!”

am." نَصَبَ شَبَكَتَهُ, "He set, put, or spread his net."
 كَمَنَ, "sat in ambush." فَلَمْ يَلْبَثْ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا, "A while
 after." 1 عَمِيَّتْ عَنِ 18 سَيِّدَةِ الْحَمَامِ, "the Queen of Pigeons."
 يَلْتَقِظُهُ, "and she was blind to the snare." الشَّرِكِ, "and
 were picking it up." عَلِقَ (with ب or في), "It became
 caught, or stuck fast, in the snare." تَضَرَّبُ فِي حَبَائِلِهَا
 "struggling in her snares." لَا تَخَاذَلْنَ فِي الْمَعَالَجَةِ, "Do
 not be divided 2 in your struggle for escape; unite, act
 in concert." وَلَا تَكُنْ نَفْسُ إِحْدَاكُنَّ الَّتِي تَخَاذَلْنَ for تَخَاذَلْنَ, "and let no one of you consider her own life of
 greater importance to her, etc." نَتَعَاوَنُ جَمِيعًا,
 "We will co-operate together": تَعَاوَنُوا, "They
 aided one another." يَقْلَعُ, قَلَعَ, "To root up."
 بَعْضًا بِبَعْضٍ, "one by means of the other; through
 one another." وَعَلَيْنَ فِي الْجَوِّ, "and rose in the air."
 لَمْ يَقْطَعْ رَجَاءَهُ مِنْهُمْ, "did not give up the hope of taking
 them." مُجِدِّدٌ, يُجَارِزُ, جَارَزَ, "To proceed." مُجِدِّدٌ, "striving
 hard; making persistent efforts." أَخَذْنَا فِي الْقَضَاءِ, "fly

1 Lit. "He had not to wait but a little while."

2 Takhāḍḥalū, "They deserted, neglected to aid, one another."

in the open ; pursue the direction of the country.”

الْعِمْرَانُ “To be hidden.” يَخْفَى، خَفِيَ : لَمْ يَخْفَ

“The town.” جَعَرَ، pl. جَعَرَةٌ، “To go to.” اِنْتَهَى إِلَى

“Burrow ; hole.” لِلْمَخَارِفِ “against dangers, or fears”:

وَرَطَةٌ، pl. مَخَافَةٌ. خَلِيلُكَ، pl. مَخَارِفُ

المَقَادِيرِ “Fated.” مَقْدَرٌ¹، “Difficulty ; danger” وَرَطَاتٌ

“Fate” : originally pl. of مَقْدُورٌ، “Predestined ;

decreed.” اِمْتَنَعَ مِنْ، “To defend one’s self against.”

إِذَا قُضِيَ ذَلِكَ عَلَيْهِمَا “To be eclipsed.” يَنْكَسِفُ، اِنْكَسَفَ

“if it be their fate ; if it be decreed that they should

suffer eclipse.”² أَخَذَ فِي قَرْصِ الْعِقْدِ الْغَمَّ، “began to cut

with his teeth the string , etc.” سَائِرٌ، “the rest of ;

the others.” أَقْبَلَ عَلَى، “come to.” أَعَادَ، يَعِيدُ

“To repeat.” اِلْتَفَتَ إِلَى، “To heed ; give attention to.”

كَأَنَّكَ الْغَمَّ، “To repeat ; reiterate.” كَأَنَّكَ الْغَمَّ، “as though

thou, etc.” وَلَا تَرَعَيْنِ لَهَا حَقًّا، “nor respect what is

due to it.” يَمَلُّ، مَلَّ، “To be , or become , weary or

¹ Orig., “A deep hollow or pit in the ground ; a deep hollow formed for the purpose of a stratagem.”

² Lit. “If that (i.e., the being eclipsed) be decreed against them.”

tired of." *يَكْسَلُ*, *كَسَلٌ* (with *عَنْ* of the thing). "To neg- 19
lect; omit through laziness." *لَمْ تَرْضَ*, "thou wouldst
not be willing; not consent to." *هَذَا مِمَّا يَزِيدُ النَّمَّ*, "This
tends to increase, etc." *صَنَعَ الْجُرَذُ*, "what the rat did":
صَنَعَ, "An act; and especially, a kind act." *تَوَاصَلُ*, "Con-
nection; affinity." *مَا يَجِدُ إِلَيْهِ سَبِيلًا*, "what is practic-
able." *إِنَّمَا*, "In truth; as a matter of fact." *أَنْسُ لِي*
مِمَّا ذَكَرْتَ, "more agreeable to me that I should eat
thee." *يَكْذِبُ* ¹, *وَلَسْتُ بِحَقِيقٍ* ², "It is unworthy of thee."
"is hid, secreted, locked up." *مِنْ النِّشْرِ الطَّيِّبِ*, "from
giving sweet scent." *وَالْأَرْجُ الْغَائِمُ* ³, "and fragrant per-
fume." *عَدَاوَةُ الْجَوْهَرِ* ⁴, "Natural antipathy; innate enmi-
ty." *مُتَكَافِيٌّ مُتَجَاوِزٌ* ⁵, "retaliatory; where the two anta-
gonists are even." *رَبَّمَا*, "Sometimes." *كَعَدَاوَةِ مَا بَيْنِي النَّمَّ*,
"like the enmity subsisting between me, etc." *سَنَوْرٌ*
"Cat." *لَوْ أُطِيلَ*, *عَائِدٌ عَلَيَّ*, "falls upon me; recoils on me."

¹ *Lit.*, "than what thou didst mention."

² "Thou art above...."

³ *Nashr*, "Sweet odour": because it spreads.

⁴ *Fā'ih*, "Diffusing" (intrans.).

⁵ *Jauhar*, "Nature."

- يُطْفِئُ , أَطْفَأَ , “even if heated for a long time.” اِسْتَخَانَهُ
 “To extinguish.” مُصَاحِبُ الْعَدُوِّ , “He who associates
 with his enemy ; makes friends with him.” صَاحِبُ
 اِسْتَأْنَسَ اِلَى , وَمُكِّ , “Snake-charmer.” الْحَيَّةِ
 “To be on familiar terms with one ; to place reliance on
 one.” وَاَنْتَ خَلِيقٌ , اَرِيْبٌ , “Intelligent ; sagacious.”
 اَنَّ النِّعَمَ , “It is worthy of thee to act in accordance
 with thy excellent natural disposition.” صَعَبٌ , “To
 render difficult.” وَلَا تُصَعِّبْ عَلَيَّ الْاَمْرَ , “and not to raise
 objections ; or place obstacles in my way.” سَرِيعٌ اِتِّصَالُهَا ,
 “is quickly formed.” الْكُوْزُ الذَّهَبِ , “a golden goblet”
 اَعَادَ , هَيِّنَ الْاَصْلَاحَ , “To restore.” اِعَادَةً , inf. n. , اَعَادَ
 mend.” ثَلَمٌ , “A break of the edge in a vessel or
 20 sword.” الْكُوْزُ الْفَخَّارِ , “an earthen vessel.” مِنْ اَدْنَى
 اَعْيَبَ , “from the least defect.” عَنْ رَغْبَةٍ اَوْ رَهْبَةٍ , “from
 desire or fear.” وَاَنَا لَا زِمَ بِابْلِكَ , “I will cling or hold fast
 to thy door ; will not turn away.” حَتَّى تُؤَاخِنَنِي , “till
 thou fraternizest with me, adoptest me as thy brother
 (أَخٌ) , اِخَاءٌ , “Brotherhood ; intimate friendship.”

لَمْ أَرُدَّ أَحَدًا عَنْ حَاجَةٍ قَطُّ, "I have never refused any one a request." ¹ بَدَأْتُكَ "I first spoke to thee."
 إِرَادَةُ التَّوَكُّلِ لِنَفْسِي, "from a desire to make quite sure of my safety." اِنْخِدَاعٌ, "The being deceived." أَوْفَى, "Dát النَّفْسِ", "Is there still in thy mind?"
 مَنَعٌ, "ذَاتُ الْيَدِ", "Property." رَأْيُهُمْ فِيَّ, "To give freely." يَمْنَهُ, "Their opinion of me." قَطِيعَةٌ, "Breach; rupture of friendly relations. تَصَانَعَا, "They took each the other's hand."
 فِي عَزْلَةٍ, "in a retired place." سَلَحِفٌ, pl. of سُلُكْفَاءُ, "A tortoise." حَيْثُ تُرِيدُ, "where thou desirest to go." أَخَذَ بَ, "To seize." عَيْنٌ, "Spring of water."
 21 خَالِيًا مِنْ, "at first; when I first began life." أَوَّلَ أَمْرِي, "without; lacking." حَاجَتُهُ, "as much as he needed."
 فَلَا أَدَعُ ... إِلَّا النِّعَمَ, "and eat all the food, leaving nothing whatever." وَائْتَبَ, "To strive." لَا أَتَالَهُ, "I cannot reach." نَزَلَ بِهِ, "alighted

¹ Lit. "I have never turned away anyone from, i.e., without granting him, his request."

² Like *wadhara*, *wada'a*, "To leave," is only used in the Imperfect and Imperative.

at his house." قَدْ جَابَ الْآفَاقَ , "had traversed many countries": آفَاقٌ, pl. of أَفَقٌ, "Horizons; quarters of the world": جَابَ, يَجُوبُ, primarily, "To cut." أَنْشَأَ, followed by the imperf. indic., "To begin." وَطِئَ, *lit.* "To tread upon"; hence, "To travel in, visit (a country)."

خِلَالَ ذَلِكَ, "at intervals; in the course of his conversation": خِلَالٌ, pl. of خَلَلٌ "An interstice or gap between two things." لِيُنْفِرَنِي, "in order to scare me away."

يَهْزَأُ (with بٍ or مِّنْ). "To scoff, laugh at; ridicule."

غَلَبَنِي, "has worsted, overpowered me; baffled me."

عَلَى, مَا أَسْتَطِيعُ لَهُ حِيلَةً, "I can do nothing to beat him."

عَلَى, مَا يَقْدِرُ عَلَى, "he cannot do," without some reason. غَيْرِ عِلَّةٍ, "and do." فَاطَّلَعَ عَلَى بَعْضِ شَأْنِهِ, "Fetch me." اَلْتَمَسَ لِي, "and know something about him." اِسْتَعَارَ, "To borrow."

حَيْثُ, "To be strong enough for; able to do." قَوِيَ عَلَى, "whither." جُعِلَ, "was made to be." زِيَادَةٌ فِي الرَّأْيِ, "and an increase of judgment and power."

وَالْتَمَنَ, "to the familiar, well-known, place." اِلَى الْمَكَانِ الْمَعْرُودِ, "To attempt." نَقَصُ حَالِي, "my deterioration;

my weakened condition." وَلَا تَطْمَعَنَّ فِيمَا عِنْدَهُ, "and expect nothing from him." فَإِنَّا نَرَى لَهُ حَالًا أَلَمَ, "for his 22 present condition appears to be such that he may be considered to be himself in need of some one to support him." لَحِقَ بِ, "To attach one's self to." يَجْفُو, جَفَا, "To avoid; shun; treat unkindly." وَأَخَذَنَ فِي غَيْبَتِي, "and began to speak evil of me."¹ يُعَادِيهِ, عَادَاهُ, "He treated or regarded him with enmity." قَعَدَ بِهِ الْعَدَمُ عَمَّا يَرِيدُهُ, pl. of عَوْن, "Helpers; allies." "he is hindered by poverty from doing what he wishes."² أَوْدِيَّةٌ, pl. of وَادٍ, "Valley; low-lying ground; channel of a river." مَرَّ إِلَى, "To pass to." تَشْرِبُهُ أَرْضُهُ, "its own ground³ will imbibe it." لَا ذِكْرَ لَهُ, "is nameless." لَا قَبُولَ لَهُ, "is unwelcome; not well received." اِفْتَقَرَ, "To become poor." اِتَّظَنَ, "To suspect; distrust." اِتَّظَنَ (with بِ of the pers.), "To think ill of." كَانَ هُوَ لِلذُّمَّةِ, "he himself is suspected; suspicion falls on

¹ *Ghibatun* is subs. from *ightāba*, 'To backbite, speak evil of one in his absence; not always, though generally, with truth.'

² i.e., "he cannot do it from lack of means."

³ i.e., "the ground where it is standing."

him." ¹ خَصْلَةٌ = خَلَّةٌ, "Property, quality; action."
 جَوَادٌ, "he is called, said to be, foolhardy." قِيلَ أَهْوَجُ
 "Liberal." مَبْدِرٌ, "Spendthrift; improvident; waste-
 ful." حَلِيمٌ, "Forbearing." ضَعِيفٌ, "Weak; feeble."
 وَتَوَرُّ, "A man of grave deportment." بَلِيدٌ, "Dull; stu-
 pid." تَحْوِجُ صَاحِبَهَا إِلَى الْمَسْئَلَةِ, "drives a man ² to beg-
 ging." لَا مِثْمَا, "especially." ³ مَسْئَلَةُ الْأَشْحَاءِ,
 "begging of the niggardly": pl. of شَحِيعٌ. كَلَّفَ,
 "be obliged, constrained." أَنْعَى, pl. أَفَاعٍ (from the
 root فَعَو), "A viper." قَاسَمَهَا النَّاسِكَ, "shared them
 with the devotee." خَرِيطَةٌ, "A leather bag; a pouch."
 لَمَّا جَنَّ اللَّيْلُ, "When night set in; when it was
 dark." رَاجَعَهُ, "To get possession of." رَاجَعَهُ, "He
 came back to him." قَضَبَانٌ, pl. قَضِيبٌ, "A rod or
 stick." ضَرْبَةٌ مُوجِعَةٌ, "a painful blow." هَيَّجَنِي الْحَرَصُ
 — وَالشَّرُّ فَخَرَجْتُ الْخُ, "Excited by avidity and greed,
 I came out, etc." أَسَالَتْ مِنِّْي الدَّمُ, "which made

¹ He becomes "an object of suspicion." *Maḥall* literally means 'place.'

² *Lit.*, "the man who has it: the needy."

³ This compound denotes exception; the noun following is put in the gen. case, but the nom. may also be used.

me bleed." تَقَلَّبْتُ ظَهْرًا لِبَطْنٍ, "I turned over and over, or upside down (*lit.* back for belly)." خَرْتُ الْغَمَّ, "I fell down." بَغَضَ إِلَيَّ... حَتَّى, "made...so hateful to me that." رَعْدَةٌ, "A tremor; shivering." تَذَكَّرْتُ, "I cogitated; reflected." صَاحِبُ الدُّنْيَا, "The worldly man." نَصَبٌ, "Toil; trouble." فَصَارَ أَمْرِي إِلَى, "and the result of all this was that."¹ سَبَقَتْ إِلَيَّ بِصَدَاقَتِهِ الْغَمَّ, "his friendship was the occasion of my friendship with the crow."² أَنَّهُ يُرِيدُ إِتْيَانَكَ, "that it was his desire, or intention, to come to thee." وَأَحَبَّ أَنْ يَعْدِلَ, عَدَلٌ, "and he wished that." نَلْتَكُنْ مَنَزِلَتِي عِنْدَكَ كَذَلِكَ, "so do thou, on thy part, regard me as a brother."³ رَقِيقٌ, "Soft; tender; gentle." وَمَا قَبِلْنَا لَكَ مَبْدُولٌ, "and whatever counsel, or aid, we can offer is freely given thee." وَإِلَافَتُهَا إِلَيْهِ, "and her answer to his speech." وَجَدِيرَةٌ, "and her courteous words to him."⁴ "worthy

¹ "In the end, I ..."

² *Lit.* "by means of his friendship, the friendship of the crow was brought to me," i.e., the one was the means of bringing about the other.

³ *Lit.* "so let my place in thine esteem be the same."

⁴ *Ilāf* 'Being courteous to': here *bi'l-kalāmi* is to be understood.

of." أَوْلَى أَهْلٍ "being made happy." أَنْ تُسَرَّ نَفْسُكَ
 — الدُّنْيَا الخ "Of all men, he has the greatest reason to be
 most happy who, etc." رَبْعٌ "Habitation ; quarters."
 جَمَاعَةٌ "is always full ; peopled." لَا يَزَالُ مَعْمُورًا
 "a number." وَيَكُونُ مِنْ وَرَاءِ أُمُورِهِمْ بِالْمِرْصَادِ "and over
 whose wants he is ever on the watch."¹ يَعْثُرُ عَثَرَ
 "To stumble ; fall" ; hence, "To fall on evil days."
 أَخَذَ بِيَدِهِ "He took his hand or arm to raise him
 (*viz.*, a fallen man) : hence, "To aid or assist one."
 يَغْرُصُ غَرَصٌ "To fall in the mud, mire." يَوْحِلُ وَحَلٌ
 فِي الْمَاءِ "To dive in, or descend beneath, the water."
 طَالِبٌ "a pursuer." تَحَلَّقَ فِي السَّمَاءِ "soared upwards."
 وَحَيْتُهُ "and saluted him." كُنْتُ أَكُونُ "I used to live."
 إِسْوَارٌ, pl. of إِسْوَارٌ (from the Pers. سوار), "Horsemen ;
 archers." قَانِصًا "a hunter." يَبْذِلُ بَذَلٌ "To give
 willingly." وَالْمَرْعَى "and pasture." فَارْغَبْ فِي مَحَبَّتِنَا
 "so settle thy mind² to remain with us." عَرِيشٌ "An

¹ Lit. "is on the watch at the back of their affairs, or interests, and wants."

² Lit. "be thou disposed."

harbour ; bower." غَاب, "kept away ; did not appear." ¹
 أَنْ, "they feared lest." عَنَت, "Difficulty ; 24
 trouble." مِمَّا يَلِينَا, "hereabouts ; in this neighbourhood" ²:
 أَنْقَضَ مُسْرِعًا, (with acc.), "To be near to." لَا يَرْجَى فِيهِ غَيْرُكَ
 "flew down swiftly ; darted down." أَغْنَى, imp. "in which none but thee can be of use" ³
 "Aid ; succour." أَكْيَاسٌ, pl. of كَيْسٌ, "Acute ; intel-
 ligent." مَا أَصَبَتْ, كَيْسٌ, "Acuteness ; intelligence." "Thou hast not done right."
 وَقَدْ قَطَعَ الْخَمْرُ, "as the mouse finishes cutting my cords." ⁴ اسْتَبَقْتُهُ عَدُوًّا, "I can
 outstrip, or outrun, him ; escape him by running."
 أَجْعَارٌ, pl. of جَعْرٌ "A hole." ثَقِيلَةٌ, "slow of motion."
 لَا سَعْيَ لَكَ وَلَا حَرَكَةً, "thou art deficient in quickness and lackest energy."
 أَلَيْفٌ, "A comrade ; friend." وَحَرِمَ سُرُورَهُ, "he is bereft of his heart." ⁵
 وَغُشِيَ بَصَرُهُ, "is robbed of his joy or happiness." وَانْفَى, "To arrive."
 "and his sight is obscured."

¹ *Ghāba*, "To be absent ; to disappear."

² *Lit.*, "in the places near to us."

³ "—in which no one can be counted upon to do anything except thee."

⁴ "Provided he has severed my cords."

⁵ "His understanding is bereft."

وَوَافَقَ ذَلِكَ فَرَاعَ الْخَمَامَةَ , "His arrival coincided with the finishing, etc."¹ تَدَبُّ , "crawling along." مَا أَرَانَا نَجَاوِزُ عَقَبَةٍ مِنَ الْبَلَاءِ الْخَمَامَةَ , "I see that no sooner we surmount a trying difficulty,² than we fall into another" : عَقَبَةٌ , "A mountain-road ; a steep declivity ; hence, metaphorically, "a hard or difficult affair." لَا يَزَالُ مُسْتَمِرًّا فِي إِقْبَالِهِ , "continues to be favored by fortune ; has a run of good fortune." لَجَّ بِهِ الْعِتَارُ , "he stumbles at every turn : " *lit.*, "stumbling persists in dogging him" ³ فِي جَدَدِ الْأَرْضِ , "on hard and level ground" ⁴ بِمَنْظَرٍ مِنْ , "in sight of." رَاقِبٌ , "To observe closely ; keep an eye on." آلَةٌ , "Instrument ; tackling." رَوْدًا , "at a gentle or leisurely rate ; by slow degrees" : رَوْدٌ is dim. of رَوْدٌ , "Gentleness." بِعَيْثٍ , "so that." وَأَمَكْنَهُ مِنْ أَخَذِكَ , "and afford him an opportunity to capture thee." وَأَنْتَ مِنْ هَذَا النَّحْوِ , "and follow this course with him." مَا اسْتَطَعْتَ , "as

¹ " At the same time, the mouse finished, etc."

² *Lit.* "pass over one mountain road of trouble."

³ 'Stumbling' is used metaphorically for 'adverse fortune.'

⁴ i.e., "even though he pursues a rational course."

far as possible.”¹ **إِلَّا يَنْصَرِفُ إِلَّا وَقَدْ أَخَذَ**, “that before
 he turns back I would have, etc.,” or “no sooner he
 turns his back than, etc.” **اسْتَجْرَهُ**, “He drew him 25
 away.” **مُقْبِلٌ عَلَى**, “actively engaged in; actively
 at work.” **مَجْهُودٌ لَاغِبًا**, “exhausted by fatigue.”²
سَعَرَ, “He dreaded the place.” **سَاحِرٌ**,
 pl. of **سَاحِرٌ**, “Magicians.” **مَوْلِيَا**, “flying; in a great
 hurry.” **كَأَحْسَنِ مَا كَانُوا عَلَيْهِ**, “as ... as ever.”

¹ *Lit.* “as far as thou canst.”

² *Lit.* “greatly tired and fatigued.”

PART I. SECTION II.—ANECDOTES AND NARRATIVES.

I.

“on a day on which he sat to administer justice,” *lit.* “to examine into wrongful exactions”² (= “on a court-day”): الْمَظَالِمُ is pl. of مَظْلَمَةٌ.³ وَنَاسَى بِصَوْتِهِ — “and cried out loudly”; *lit.* “with [all] his voice.” ضِيَاعِي وَعَقَارِي “my estates and lands”: عَقَارٌ = ضِيَاعٌ, “Lands yielding revenue.” رِيسَارِي خَصَمَهُ “from his place or seat.” *lit.* “and be level with his opponent,” i.e., “stand beside him.”⁴ فَلَا أَعَارِضُهُ فِيهَا “I will not oppose his claim thereto.” وَشَرَفَ هِمَّتَهُ “and his high-mindedness, pride.”

II.

“To slip.” بِأَبِي أَنْتَ وَأُمِّي “With my father mayest thou be ransomed (مَقْدِي suppressed)”

¹ *Al-Manṣūr* the second caliph of the House of ‘Abbās. The title *king* is seldom prefixed to the name of a caliph.

² In the first centuries of Islām, the important office of “examination into wrongful exactions” was administered by the caliph himself.

³ “A right or due wrongfully taken from one.”

⁴ In law suits the two parties should stand alongside each other.

and with my mother." لَا تُهْلِكْ, "Do not spoil";
lit. "destroy." لَا عَلَيْكَ, "Never mind! it matters not."
 طَيْبُ الْأَعْرَاقِ, "the utmost possible." غَايَةُ مَا يُمَكِّنُ
 strain; kindly disposition": pl. of عِرْقٌ — سَعَةُ الْأَخَاقِ,
 "Large-heartedness."²

III.

يَنْزِلُ (with عَلَى or بِ), "To alight at the house
 of (as a guest)." يَنْحَرُ, نَحَرَ, "To slaughter a camel
 (by a stab above the collar-bone 'نَحْرٌ')."³ شَأْنَكُمْ
 "Come on! It is at your service!" يَسِيرٌ, "Little." 27
 اِعْتَذِرِي عَنَّا إِلَيْهِ, "Fresh or juicy (flesh-meat, etc.)." غَرِيضٌ,
 "Make our excuses to him." اِرْتَفَعَ النَّهَارُ "The day
 was advanced: the sun being somewhat high." رَكَّبَ,
 "A troop of horsemen; riders, or travellers, upon
 camels." قَرَى, "Hospitality."

¹ The root or origin of anything"; also, "a strain; i.e., a hereditary, inborn, or natural disposition."

² This passage may be freely translated thus: "This story indicates the greatest height to which kings may attain in the way of kindliness of disposition and large-heartedness."

³ In the acc., being object of a verb understood *ish'annā*, *lit.* "Pursue your way or course," i.e., here, "Eat."

⁴ Consisting of ten or more; it is a quasi-pl. n., or, as some say, a broken pl. of *rākib* 'a rider.'

IV.

الطَّائِيُّ, "of the tribe of طِيّ." قَيَّاصِرَةُ الرُّومِ, "The Roman or Greek emperors": pl. of قَيَّاصِرٌ, "Caesar." اِسْتَعْرَبَهُ, "He deemed it improbable." حُجَّابٌ, pl. of حَاجِبٌ, "A chamberlain." اَنْ يَّمْتَحِنَ سَمَاحَتَهُ, "to put his liberality to the test." اَبْيَاتٌ, pl. of اَبِيَّةٌ, "Tents." اَلْمَوَاشِي, pl. of مَاشِيَةٌ, "Cattle." لِقَرَى, "To kindle a fire." اَضْرَمَ النَّارَ, "to entertain his guest." ضَيْفُهُ, "to ask him for the gift of the horse." يَسْتَمِيحُهُ الْفَرَسَ, "To grieve": *trans.* هَلَّا اَعْلَمْتَنِي, "Why didst thou not inform me (of it)?" جَزُورٌ, fem., "A camel for slaughter." بَيْنَ يَدَيَّ, "before me; within reach."

V.

اِيَّادِي, "of the tribe of *Iyād*." خَرَجَ فِي قُفْلٍ, "He set out with a caravan." مِنْ بَنِي النَّمِيرِ, "of the children of An-Namir; a Namirite."¹ يَضِلُّ, "To lose one's way." شَحَّ مَآوُهُمْ, "Their water became scarce, or

¹ The relative adjective from *An-Namir* is *Namirī*, and not *Namirī*.

scanty ; little water was left them." ^{تَصَافُوا الْمَاءَ} , "They shared the water." ^{قَعْبٌ} ¹ "A wooden drinking cup (for one person)." ^{بِقَدْرِ مَا يَغْمُرُ الْحَصَاةَ} "as much as would cover the pebble." ^{دَارَ} , "passed round, circulated." ^{يُحِدُ نَظْرَهُ إِلَيْهِ} , "looking sharply, or intently, at him." ^{فَأَثَرُهُ بِمَائِهِ} ² , "So he gave him his own share of the water by preference." ^{مَنْزِلَهُمُ الْآخَرَ} , "at the next halting-place." ^{قُوَّةٌ لِلنَّهْضِ} , "strength to rise from his place." ^{رَدَّ} , imp. of ^{يَرُدُّ} ^{وَرَدَ} , the objective complement ^{الْمَاءِ} being understood, "To the water !" : ^{وَرَدَ} , "To reach or arrive at water." ^{خَبِئُوا عَلَيْهِ} , "They covered him (as with a tent)." ^{يَمْنَعُهُ مِنَ السَّبْعِ} , "as a protection from beasts." ^{ذَهَبَ مَثَلًا} , "passed into a proverb."

VI.

^{لَمْ يَلِ} , "Chief, or prince." ^{إِمَامٌ} , "Saladin." ^{صَلَّاحُ الدِّينِ} , from ^{يَلِي} , "To rule." ^{الصَّحَابَةُ} , "The Companions of the Prophet." ^{يَأْمَنُونَ ظِلْمَهُ لِعَدَلِهِ} , "felt secure from his

¹ In the manner described in the text.

² From *ḥadda*, 'to sharpen a knife, etc.'

oppression because of his justice.”¹ مَنَائِع, pl. of مَنِيْعَة
 “A good deed; kind act.” رَضِيع — العِمَاد, “An infant;
 a child at the breast.” مَهْد, “Cradle.” اَبْنُ ثَلَاثَةِ اَشْهُرٍ,
 “three months old.” وَجَدَ, يَجِدُ, inf. n. وَجْدٌ, “To
 grieve passionately.” بَاعَ, يَبِيعُ, pass. of بَاعَ, “had been
 sold.” رَسَمَ, “To order.” جِيءَ بِهِ, “was brought.”
 حَمَلَهَا الْغُ, “He gave her a horse to ride and sent her
 to her people, etc.” (=sent her back on a horse).

VII.

يَقْدُ, وَفَدَ, “To arrive at the court of a king³
 (ambassador).” الْأَنْصَارُ, “The Anṣār”:⁴ lit. “Helpers.”
 عَمَّا يُنْعَدُّ بِهِ فِي الْمَرْؤَدَاتِ “on the subject of daughters
 buried alive by their fathers”:⁵ وَأَدَ, “To bury one’s
 daughter alive.” عَنِ الْحَمْلِ — بَنِيَّةٌ, dim. of بَنِيَّةٌ, “about
 the child she was bearing.” وَنَبَعَتْ, “and blossomed.”

¹ i.e. “they trusted so much in his justice that they had no fear of his ever doing an unjust act.”

² Imādu-d-Dīn al-Kātib al-Iṣḫānī, a great writer and historian of the sixth century of the Hijrah (A.D. 1126—1201); secretary and friend of Saladin.

³ —a king, governor or great man, as envoy or to convey gifts, etc.

⁴ Those inhabitants of Medina who befriended Mohammad when he fled thither from Mecca.

⁵ *Mā yutahaddathu bihi*, “what is commonly said; stories current.”

⁶ Some time a general custom among the Arabs; forbidden in the Qur’ān.

ضَفَرَتْ شَعْرَهَا, "plaited her hair." قُرُونٌ, pl. of قَرْنٌ, "Curls ; locks (of hair)." جُدَادٌ, "A net ; ravelled threads." — وَالدَّيْسُ الْخِ, "Shells ; conchæ veneris ; cowries." — وَالدَّيْسُ الْخِ, "and put over it, decked it with, a string of onyx." فَأَمْسَكَتُ, "I let her alone." غَفَلْتُ, "was off her guard." 29 أَنْتَ مَغْطٍ عَلَيَّ¹, أَخْبِرْنِي بِحَقِّكَ, "Tell me, father mine." — أَنْتَ مَغْطٍ عَلَيَّ¹, "Art thou going to cover me up ?" يَقْذِفُ, قَذَفَ, "To throw, shovel (earth)."² وَارَى (with acc.), "To cover ; put out of sight." — فَتِلْكَ, "stopped ; ceased." — فَتِلْكَ, "Now, that one— I look back at her with sorrowful regret."³ إِنَّ هَذِهِ لَقَسْوَةٌ, "This is indeed cruelty, hardness of heart."

VIII.

نَشَاغَلُ بِ, "To be occupied, busied with." رُجُوهٌ, pl. of رَجْءٌ, "Chief personages ; nobles." قَدْ أَمَكَّنَكَ الْقُرْمَةُ, "Now is the time to strike at the Arabs."⁴

¹ *Lit.* "I adjure thee by all that is due to thee as a father" : a coaxing way of address.

² *Prop.* "To throw stones."

³ *Lit.*, "regret for her is still in my heart."

⁴ "Now is your chance" ; *lit.* "Chance has given thee power over the Arabs ; has put it in thy power to subjugate them."

وَقَعَ بِأَسْهُمَ بَيْنَهُمْ, "Their strength, or prowess, is being used against one another."¹ وَالرَّأْيَ, "It is therefore advisable." يَغْزُو, غَزَا, "To invade; attack an enemy in his own country." فَبَايَا عَلَيْهِ إِلَّا أَنْ يَفْعَلَ, "but they insisted on his doing so."² أَحْرَشَ بَيْنَهُمَا, prop. حَرَشَ, "excited, set, them against one another." وَهُمْ مُجْتَمِعُونَ, "assembled as they are in one place." فَعَرَفُوا صِدْقَ قَوْلِهِ, "They recognized the truth of what he said." رَجَعَ عَنْ, "To desist from; give up one's intention."

IX.

حَاشِيَّةٌ, "The *entourage* of a prince; retinue." سَوَادٌ خَلَقٌ, "an old and worn out *sawād* or black garment."³ مُتَقَطَّعًا, "all tattered" رِزْقَكَ, "أَمَّا تَقْبِضُ رِزْقَكَ", "Dost thou not receive thy stipend?" تَرَكَّةٌ, "Estate; the property left at a man's death." فِي قِضَائِ دَيْنِهِ, "in discharge of his debts." فَصَرَفْتُ ... إِلَى حُرْمَتِهِ

¹ Their might is being spent among themselves: *lit.*, "has fallen amongst themselves."

² *Lit.*, "but they declined everything but that he should do so."

³ The 'Abbāside caliphs and their followers used to wear black, as a sign of mourning for the large number of the Prophet's descendants who were killed during the preceding Omayyad reign.

“ I diverted or made over ... to his widow.” ^{مِنْ بَعْدِهِ}
 “ (he left) after him.” ^{أَعْدُ عَلَيَّ فِي قَدٍ}, “ Come to
 me early next morning.” ^{الرَّبِيعُ} : name of the Caliph’s
 chamberlain.” ^{قَضَى حَاجَتَهُ مِنْ}, “ To finish doing.”
^{وَمَا قَصَرْتُ فِي الْغَدُو}, “ I have not failed to come early.”
^{عِنْدَ نَفْسِي}, “ as I thought.” ^{مُضَرَّة}, “ A quilt.”
^{فِي نَاحِيَةِ الْمَجَالِسِ}, “ glistening ; burning.” ^{يَزْهَرُ},
 “ in a corner of the room.” ^{أَحْنُوهُمَا فِي كُمِّي}, “ to
 shove them in my sleeve.” ^{وَزَنْتُ الدِّنَانِيرَ}, “ I weighed
 the dinārs.”¹

X.

^{السَّفَاحُ}, “ The Sanguinary.” ^{دَابَّة}, “ A riding beast ; 30
 a horse.” ^{يَقُودُ قَادَ}, “ To lead.” ^{تُصَلِّحُ الصَّيْدَ}, “ prepare
 the game for the table.” ^{لَا يَدُ لَهُمْ}, “ *must* have ; cannot
 do without.” ^{تَجْمَعُهُمْ}, “ which will hold them all.”
^{أَنْطَاعَ}, “ To grant (land).” ^{غَامِرَةٌ}, “ uncultivated ; waste.”
^{فَيَافٍ}, pl. of ^{فَيْفَاءُ}, “ Deserts ; wastes.” ^{بَنُو أَسَدٍ} : a tribe.

¹ Gold and silver coins of different standards were calculated by weight. The standard of weight of a silver coin was the *dirham* ; of a gold coin, the *mithqāl*.

² Or rather the “ Munificent ” : first caliph of the House of ‘Abbās.

XI.

قَعَطَتِ الْبَادِيَةُ, "There was a famine in the desert."
 أَيَّامَ, "in the days or reign of." جَلَسَ لَهُمْ, "He gave
 them an audience." ذُرَابَةٌ, "A pendent lock of hair."
 بُرْدَةٌ, "A striped cloak." أَخْلَبَ¹ بِإِمَانٍ, fem. إِمَانِيَّةٌ, "To
 be derogatory to a man's dignity; to dishonour; injure
 in esteem." اِنْتَقَصَ (with acc.), "To detract from;
 lower; degrade." فَهَابُوكَ دُونَهُ, "but through awe of thee
 they could not mention it." وَأَنَّ الْكَلَامَ نَشَرَ وَالسُّكُوتَ طَيَّ²
 , اُنْشُرْ, "Now, speech is unfolding; silence is folding."
 "Unfold!" لَا أُمَّ لَكَ : an exclamation of commendation,
 lit. meaning, "Mayest thou have no mother!" وَسُنُونُ
 "Years of drought." أَكَلَتِ اللَّحْمَ, "consumed our
 flesh." انْقَتَ الْعَظْمَ : read نَقَّتِ الْعَظْمَ, "drained the mar-
 row from our bones"; or, أَرَقَّتِ الْعَظْمَ, "dried up our
 bones." فَضُولُ أَمْوَالٍ, "excess, or surpluses, of money
 or revenue." يَحْبِئُ, "To withhold." يَجْزِي جَزَى

¹ "Of or from Yemen"; here, "of the fabric of Yemen": an irregular noun of relation, or relative adjective.

² i.e. "by speaking, one unfolds his mind; by keeping silence, what is in the mind remains, as it were, folded up."

“To reward.” اَعْصَا , “To be unmindful of.”
 اُرْدُدْهَا فِي , “To distribute among.” فَرَّقَ فِي ,
 “Add it to.” فِي خَاصَّةٍ نَفْسِي , “individually.” دُونَ , “apart from.”

XII.

هَاشِمِي , “A Hashimite.”¹ نَالَ , “To fall to the lot of.”
Last line, p. 30 read: يَا مَوْلَايَ أَمَّا نَحْنُ فَقَدْ نَصِيرُ النِّعَمَ .
 مَعَارِفُ , “Acquaintances.” التَّوَسُّعَةُ عَلَيَّ , “to help me, 31
 relieve my necessities.” بِمَا يُمْكِنُهُ وَيَحْضُرُهُ , “with what
 he can spare, or is available.” : فَمَا اسْتَقَرَّ قَرَارُهُ the pron.
 refers to كَيْسَ . — عَلَى حَالِهِ , “as it was.” عَنَّفَ , “To
 reproach.” الْمُوَاسَاةُ , “sealed as it was.” وَهُوَ بَاقٍ بِخَتْمِهِ ,
 “help ; assistance.” بِذَاتِهِ , “itself.” هَلُمَّ , “Come !”

XIII.

خَاصٌّ بِ , “Belonging exclusively to, as familiar
 or close companion.” أَعْيَا الْجَوَابَ , “To be at a loss for
 an answer ; be unable to give an answer.”³ ذُرُ الرِّئَاسَتَيْنِ⁴

¹ A descendant of Hāshim, grandfather of the Prophet.

² “The purse had scarcely remained in my possession for a while, etc.”

³ As when an argument is unanswerable.

⁴ “The holder of the two commands.” Faḍl b. Sahl, Al-Mu'mūn's *wazīr* ; so called because he was at the head of both the civil and military departments of the State.

- 31 “To condole with.” ^{عَزَى} يَعْزِي , “To grieve; mourn.” ^{أَخْلَفَ} أَخْلَفَ عَلَيْكَ مِنِّي الْخَ , “has given thee in me a son to supply his place.” ^{اِنْبَسَطَ} اِنْبَسَطَ , “To be open or unreserved” : contrary of ^{اِنْقَبَضَ} اِنْقَبَضَ . — ^{تَنَبَّأَ} تَنَبَّأَ ,
 32 “To pass one’s self off as a prophet.” ^{وَيَحْكُ} وَيَحْكُ , “Woe to thee!” ^{آيَةً} آيَةً , “Sign; miracle.” ^{بَيَّنَّ} بَيَّنَّ , “To be manifested, proved.” ^{كَيْدَ السَّحَرَةِ} كَيْدَ السَّحَرَةِ , “the craft, or tricks, of the magicians.” ^{جَيْبُ} جَيْبُ , “The bosom of a shirt or vest.” ^{أَتَى} أَتَى , “To adduce, bring forward; perform.” ^{أَنَا رَبُّكُمْ الْأَعْلَى} أَنَا رَبُّكُمْ الْأَعْلَى , “I am your Lord supreme.”
 (Qur. lxxiv, 14.) ^{عُمَالٍ} عُمَالٍ, pl. , “Governor of a province.” ^{فَوَّجَهْتُ} فَوَّجَهْتُ , “whose conduct I approved.” ^{الْقُعُودَ لَكُمْ} الْقُعُودَ لَكُمْ , “I had this answer taken to them.” ^{وَالْيَهُمَّ} وَالْيَهُمَّ , “to give you an audience, a hearing.” ^{يَتَوَلَّى الْمُنَظَرَةَ عَنْكُمْ} يَتَوَلَّى الْمُنَظَرَةَ عَنْكُمْ , “to argue your cause.” ^{أُطْرُوشُ} أُطْرُوشُ , “Dull of hearing.”
^{تَفَضَّلَ بِذَلِكَ} تَفَضَّلَ بِذَلِكَ , “To bear with; tolerate.” ^{صَبَرَ عَلَى} صَبَرَ عَلَى , “he will graciously do so.” ^{مَثَلَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ} مَثَلَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ , “He appeared before him; stood in his presence.” ^{فَخَاخِرُ} فَخَاخِرُ ,
 pl. of ^{دَخِيرَةٌ} دَخِيرَةٌ , “Treasures; hoards; heirlooms.” ^{لِيَرَحِمَ} لِيَرَحِمَ

شَوَانَا , “to hear our prayer.”¹ تَطَرَّلَ عَلَى , “To do one a favour.” سُخْطٌ , “Discontent.” عَقَّةٌ , “Honesty ; integrity.” خَصَّهُ بِ , “To assign exclusively to.” اِسْتَعْمَلَهُ , “To impose as a duty.” اَلَزَمَ , “Appoint him (as governor).” قُمْ , “Away ! Off with you !”

XIV.

عَلَى اِثْرِ عَيْرٍ³. اَلْيَحْمُومِ². اَلنَّعْمَانُ بْنُ اَلْمُنْذِرِ , “after a wild ass.” ذَهَبَ بِهِ فِي اَلْاَرْضِ , “carried him off ; ran off with him.” وَاَخَذَتْهُ السَّمَاءُ , “and the rain began to fall” : 33 lit. “seized him.” دَفَعَ اِلَى بِنَاءٍ , “He reached, or came to, a tent.” هَلْ مِنْ مَّأْوًى , “Is there any shelter?” — وَمَا اَخْلَقَهُ اَنْ يَكُونَ اَلْخِ , “and in all probability he is, etc.” مَلَّةٌ , prop. means, “Hot ashes” ; it is here used for حَلَبٌ = اِحْتَلَبَ , “Bread hot from the ashes.” مَرَقَةٌ مَضِيْدَةٌ , “To milk.” , “Soup or broth cooked with milk.” وَاَحْتَالَ لَهُ شَرَابًا , “and he managed to get him some wine.” اَتَى , نَكْبَةٌ — اَلْحَيْرَةُ⁴ , “A misfortune.”

¹ Or, “to remove in his mercy our cause of complaint.”

² The last king of Al-Hirah (A.D. 582-604).

³ Al-Yahmūm, name of the horse ; lit. meaning “Black.”

⁴ Capital of Au-Nu‘mān.

(with acc.), "To go to." ^{يَوْمٌ بُؤْسٌ}, "A black-letter day." ^{يَوْمٌ نَعِيمٌ}, "A red-letter day." ^{سَاءَ مَكَانُهُ}, "He was sorry to see him ; he was much grieved at his coming on such a day." ¹ ^{الْمَنْزُولُ بِهِ}, "at whose tent he had alighted." ^{أَبَيْتَ اللَّعْنِ}, "May never thee a curse be-tide!" ² ^{مَا سَأَلَ}, "To appear, present oneself to." ^{بَدَا لَكَ}, "whatever comes to thy mind ; what you list." ^{يُؤَجِّلُ}, "To grant a delay." ^{أَتَمَّ بِ}, "To visit ; go to." ^{وَأُهَيَّئَ حَالَهُمْ}, "and settle their affairs." ^{أَقِمَّ لِي كَفِيلًا}, "Find me some one to stand surety for thee." ^{وَكَانَ يُكْنَى}, "who was surnamed." ^{وَكَانَ صَاحِبَ الرِّدَافَةِ} — ³ ^{أَبُو الْكَوْفَرَانِ}, "and held the office of *ridf* to the king." ⁴ ^{كَلَّابٌ} : name of a tribe. ^{هُوَ عَلَيَّ}, "I'll be responsible for him." ^{وَضَعَهُ إِيَّاهُ}, "He made him to be his surety ; admitted him as such." ^{حَوْلٌ}, "A year." ^{مِنْ قَابِلٍ}, "of next 34

¹ Lit. "His situation, or his being there, grieved him."

² A greeting addressed to kings in pre-Islamic times, meaning "Mayest thou refuse to do, i.e., mayest thou never do, a thing that would occasion thy being cursed!"

³ Al-Hawfazān was the son of this Sharik. His real name was al-Hārith, but was called al-Hawfazān, from having been once driven off his horse by a thrust of a spear : *hafaza*, "To thrust, pierce with spear."

⁴ The *ridf* of a king in pre-Islamic times was the highest functionary in the State and corresponded to the *wazir* of after days. He acted as regent during the absence of the king : from *radafa*, "to come after."

year." حَالَ الْعَدْلُ, "The year came; passed over."
 فَإِنَّ يَكُ مَدْرُ هَذَا الْيَوْمِ وَلَيْ فَإِنَّ غَدًا لِنَظَرِهِ قَرِيبٌ, "When
 the first part of the day is gone by, the morrow is not
 far off to the man who expects it (= Time flies).
 وَرَجَلِهِ رَكِبَ فِي خَيْلِهِ وَرَجَلِهِ, "he rode out escorted by his
 horse and foot." الْغَرِيَّانِ, "The Mausoleums."¹
 نَطَعَ or نَطَعُ, وَتَجَبُّ, وَجَبَّتِ الشَّمْسُ, "To set (sun)."
 "A sheet of dressed leather, on which a criminal
 sits to be decapitated." رُفِعَ لَهُمْ شَخْصٌ, "The figure
 of a man was, as it were, raised into view, i.e., it
 rose into view; they saw it from afar." شَقَّ عَلَيْهِ,
 "It distressed him; he was grieved at it." فَأَعْرَضَهَا عَلَيَّ,
 "Explain it to me; set it before me." تَنَصَّرَ, "He
 became a Christian." سُنَّةٌ, "A custom or practice,
 whether good or bad." فِي بَعْضِ الْمَنَاطِقِ, "by some-
 thing they said." ظَهَرَ, "The outside, or exterior."
 35 شُومٌ, "Black camels."² ظَرَبَانُ, "The polecat": it

¹ These were two tall buildings erected over the tombs of two eun-companions of An-Nu'mān. The mausoleums were thus called because An-Nu'mān used to smear them [*gharrā*, to smear] with the blood of those he slew on his day of evil fortune. The story is told in the text.

² *Shu'm*, in this sense, has no sing.; according to another reading the word is *shūm*, without ^o and is pl. of *ashyam*, "black."

has a strong, offensive smell. يَغْرِى, غَرَى, "To smear; daub."

XV.

كِتَابُ الْمَغَازِي, "The Book of Warlike Expeditions."¹
 حَالِكَةٌ, "very dark; pitch dark." الزَّمْنِي, "Come with me; follow me." وَهُوَ مُتَنَكَّرٌ, "in disguise." أُرِيدُ جَوْلَةً, "I want to take a stroll." الدَّامِسِ, "dark (night)."
 لَيْلَةٌ قَرٍ, "a cold wintry night": lit. "a night of cold." أَوْشَكَ أَنْ, "To compass; make the circuit of." أَتَى عَلَى, "To be about, on the point of, going to." صَبِيَّةٌ, pl. of صَبِي, "Boys; children." يُعَوِّلُنَ عَلَيْهَا, "crying to her." أَثَانِي, "Three stones, or a trivet, on which cooking-vessels are placed." رَوِيْدًا, "Gently! softly!" سِرْبِنًا, "Let us go or move away." يَصُبُّ, صَبَّ, "To pour out the contents of a cooking-pot and serve." الْعَيُونُ, lit. "The eyes": here, by a synecdoche, "People; men." حَصْبَاءٌ, "A distraction; diversion." عِلَلٌ, "Pebbles": a quasi-pl. n. يُعِلِّلُ, عَلَّلَ, "To divert or

¹ A history of Muhammad's campaigns.

- occupy one with something." مَقْطُوعَةٌ, "Helpless; friendless." نَكَسَ, بِحَيٍّ, "To bless; preserve." "To lower or strike down"; also, "To bend one's head." اِرْتَاعَ, عَلَمَ, pl. of اَعْلَامَ, "A flag or standard." "To be frightened, alarmed." ضَيَّقَ الْيَدَ, "in straitened circumstances." فَيَتَوَلَّى لَوَازِمَهُ, "so may he take it upon himself to supply his wants." نَاقَةٌ, "Poverty; want." وَحَرَ, "Generous; noble; good." حَيَاءُ, "A sense of shame." تَعَدَّى, "To transgress." يَبِيتُ الدَّخِيرَةَ, يَذِبُ, "To drive away." وَيُذِيفُ, "Store-house." وَحَلَ عَلَى, "and more." "To shift to." وَحَلَ عَنْ, "To shift off." سَمَنٌ, "Clarified butter; ghee." اِنْهَارَ, "To fall; flow down (a heap of sand, etc.)." اِلَى اَنْ اَنْصَعْنَا, "till we arrived half-way." حَمَلَ, "To bear 37" "on the day of Judgment." يَوْمَ الدِّينِ, "a burden; have to answer for." ظَلَامَةٌ, "A wrong; an unjust act." حَصَى, "Pebbles": n. un. حَصَاةٌ. يَكْهَتُ, يَكْهَتُ, "O what a heinous crime!" يَا لَهُ مِنَ الْخِ, "To pant." تَطَفَّأَ, "To go out; burn out

(fire). طَاطَا, "through his beard." مِنْ خِلَالِ لِحْيَتِهِ, "To lower the head." إِنَاءٌ, "A vessel; a dish." يُلْقِمُ, أَلْقَمَ, "To feed with the hand": لُقْمَةٌ,

38 "A mouthful." رَاتِبٌ, "moved." زَلَزَلْتُ, "A pension; allowance."

XVI.

أَفْضَتِ الْخِلَافَةُ إِلَى الْخِ, "The Caliphate passed or descended to; fell into the hands of." فِي سِنِّ الشَّبَابَةِ, "in his youth." أَمَانٌ, "A pardon; quarter." الرِّمُّ, "To happen to; befall (an incident, adventure). مَرَبِّهِ, "Attend, or keep to, my court." مَجْلِسِي, "To overlook or open to the desert or country." عَلَى الصَّحْرَاءِ, "The roof or top of a house." أَعْلَامٌ سَوْدٌ, "Black flags." رَحْبَةٌ, "Courtyard; square." وَسِيمٌ, "Handsome of face; elegant." وَكُنْتُ عِنْدَهُ فِي كُلِّ يَدَمِنْ, أَدَمَنْ, "I had every thing I could desire." مَا أُحِبُّ, "To do a thing constantly, invariably or regularly; persist in." وَفِيَّ مَ, "Wherefore? For what purpose?" قَدْ وَجَبَ عَلَيَّ, = "Friend!" يَا هَذَا, "Death." حَتْفٌ

39

¹ As stated before, black was the colour of the 'Abbāsids.

حَقَّكَ, "For your kindness I owe you a good turn (Shak.)" يَدُلُّ, دَلَّ عَلَى, "To direct; impart information to, as to the whereabouts of a person." وَأُقَرِّبُ عَلَيْكَ, يُضَيِّعُ, أَضْجَرُ, "and bring thee nearer the goal." "To bore; weary; tire." أَخْفَرُ الدِّمَّةَ—سَرَفَ, "To violate a promise; break faith." لَسْتُ آمِنٌ عَلَيْكَ, "I am afraid thou art not safe with me."

XVII.

يُكَافِي, كَانَا, inf. n. of الْمَكَافَاةُ, "To requite; recompense." مَاحِبُ الشُّرْطَةِ, "Captain of the guards; Prefect of the police." مُكْبَلٌ, "Heavily fettered." لَبَيْكَ, "Here I am: I wait thy commands." اسْتَوْثِقَ مِنْ, "To secure (a prisoner)." احْتَرَزَ عَلَى, "To take good care of; keep a sharp lookout, so as to prevent escape." مَا كُنْتُ بِأَذِيٍّ, قَضِيَّةٌ, "An occurrence; affair; story." يَشْغَبُ, شَغَبَ, "I will not, etc.": emphatic. "To rise; take up arms": شَغَبَ, شَغَبَ, "A tumult;

¹ This particle changes the present to the future: it is often used in threatening and promising.

- outbreak; riot." **خَرَجَ عَلَى**, "To revolt; rise in
 40 open rebellion." **تَدَلَّى**, "To let one's self down."
قَصْرُ الْحَجَّاجِ, "The castle¹ of Ḥajjāj." **يَغِيثُ أَغَاثَ**,
 'To aid; succour.' **مَقْصُورَةٌ**, "A chamber." **دُونَكُمْ الدَّارَ**,
 'Go into the house.' **يَذْهَبُ زَهْرٌ**, "To rebuke; check."
مَا تَعْمَلْنِي, "could not support me." **مَرَفَ عَنْ**, "To
 avert from." **صَارَ إِلَى**, "To come to; enter the do-
 main of." **دَعَا**, "Peace." **أَحْوَجَ إِلَى**, "To leave
 one in need of." **يَقْتَرُ فَنَرَعَنَ**, "To neglect; slacken;
 weary, tire of." **تَفَقَّدَ**, "Studying the wants of; making
 inquiries after." **وَقَفَ عَلَى**, "To find out; discover."
أَخَذَ عَلَيْهِ الْمَوَائِقَ, "To bind one by oaths or prom-
 ises." **بِالْكُنْيَةِ**, "by my surname."² **لَكَ عَلَيَّ عَهْدٌ**,
وَلَا فَيْئَكَ, "I solemnly swear to you."³ **وَلَا فَيْئَكَ**,
 "and I will assuredly repay thee." **مَهْمَا اسْتَطَعْتُ**,
 "as far as I can; to the best of my ability."

¹ Called after an Omayyad prince; it gave its name to a large quarter in Damascus, and was used at that time as the residential quarters of the governors of the city.

² A *kunya* is a surname of relationship; as "Abū 'Alī," "Ibn Aḥmad," etc.

³ 'Aḥdu 'l-lāhi is "Oath by attestation of god."

- أَقَامُوا فِيَّ, "the necessities of the journey." آلَةُ السَّفَرِ,
 كَدَّ الْخَمْرُ "laboured the whole day." السَّاعَةَ, "just now." 41
 مَرَكَبٌ, "To take provisions for a journey." تَخَّتَ, "A
 mount; a horse or camel to ride." يَسُوسُ سَاسَ, "A
 suit of clothes." نُسَخَةً, "To tend a beast." يَشِيعُ, شَيْعَ, "To see off." تَوَقَّعَ
 تَفَرَّغَ لِأَمْرٍ, "To address one's self, direct one's attention, to an affair; be at
 leisure to do so." وَلَا مَرُونَةَ تَلَزَمَكَ, "or any incidental
 trouble." 1 أَثَبْتُ مَعْرِفَتَهُ, "I identified him; recognized
 him with certainty." مَا تَمَّاكْتُ أَنْ, "I could not
 help; could not restrain myself." هَاجَ, يَهِيْجُ, "To arise; take place (a riot, etc.)." أَمْرِيْ
 لَا مَحَالَةَ, "my case is serious." عَظِيمٌ, "undoubtedly."
 نَكْلٌ, pl. of الْأَنْكَالُ, "if you please." فَإِنْ رَأَيْتَ أَنَّ الْخَمْرَ
 عَلَيَّ بِكَذَا, "his deputy." نَائِبُهُ, "Fetters; chains." 42
 "Bring me such and such a thing." الْاَنْبَارُ, "Al-Anbār." 2

1 Or "without any trouble attaching to thee, or fastening upon thee," i.e., without having to undergo any trouble.

2 Name of a town on the Euphrates.

خَطْبٌ, "Affair; case." اِحْتَجِبَ, "To allege; plead."

رَدَّ, "To bring back." رَفَعَهُ بِنَفْسِهِ, "that

would be saving his life": وَقَاهُ بِنَفْسِهِ, "To save one by

sacrificing one's own life." اُنْشِدَكَ اللَّهَ, "I adjure thee

by God." تَعَنَّنَا, "He perfumed his clothes in prepara-

tion for burial." قَالَ لَكَ الْخَ, "commands thee, saying."

شَأْنُكَ وَمَا تُرِيدُ, "I swear by God." اَللّٰهُ عَلَيَّ عَهْدٌ, "Do

whatever thou desirest." كَيْتَ وَكَيْتَ, "Such and such."

43 هَلَا, "Why ... not ... ?" فِيْ وَفَائِكَ لَهُ, "in discharging

thy debt to him." وَهَذِهِ مِنْهُ الْخَ, "This action¹ of his

is even worthier, etc." عَلَى السَّرَّاءِ وَالضَّرَّاءِ, "in prosperity

and adversity; in weal and woe." صَلَّى رَكْعَتَيْنِ, "He

offered up two *rak'ah* prayers."² وَعَرَضَ عَلَيْهِ الْخَ, "offered

him the governorship of." فَاسْتَعْفَى, "but he prayed

to be excused." بِأَلَاتِهَا, "with their trappings." وَأَطْلَقَ

خَرْبَطَهُ, "and to exempt him from taxation." خَرَّاجِهِ

الْبَرِيدِ, "The mail-bag."

¹ The word *al-fi'latu* is to be understood.

² Prayers performed by Muslims are said to be of so many "*rak'ahs*," or inclinations of the head and body. A thanksgiving prayer is composed of two such "*rak'ahs*," or forms of prayer.

XVIII.

رُفِعَ إِلَى, "It was reported." بَقَايَا, pl. of بَقِيَّةٌ, "Noblesse"; also, "remnant." سَمَحَ جَوَادٌ, "extremely liberal and generous." كَثِيرُ الْبَدَلِ الْغِ, "munificent and hospitable." لَا يَزْمَنُ مِنْهُ, "is not safe; is dangerous to the state." مَنَارَةٌ: prop. name. فِي بَعْضِ حَجَجِهِ, "during one of his pilgrimages." الْمَوْسِمُ, "the pilgrim season." بَايَعَ لِ, "He caused oaths of allegiance to be made to, as his successor." خَالٍ, "all alone." اُنْظُرْ كَيْفَ يَكُونُ, "See it is rightly done." خَبَرُ الْأُمُومِيِّ, "the story or case of the Omayyad." وَأَزَحْتُ عَلَيْكَ فِي الْغِ, "and have furnished everything necessary for thy journey: provisions, money and equipage." وَتَضُمُّ إِلَيْكَ الْغِ, "and thou wilt take with thee." يُنْفِذُ, أَنْفَذَ إِلَى, "To send; despatch." سِتَّةَ, "six nights." اِيَابُ, "Return from a journey." 44 فِي شِقَّةٍ مِنْهُ, "A double camel-litter." مَعْمَلُ, "in one half of it." يَكِلُ, وَكَلَ إِلَى, "To intrust, leave to

¹ Lit., "and have removed thy needs as regards, etc."

others." وَالْحَالَ وَالْمَحَلَّ, "the place and all it contains." إِيَّاكَ أَنْ يُشَيِّكَ, "word by word." حَرْفًا بِحَرْفٍ, "Beware of being misled, or thrown off the scent, with respect to any matter connected with him." اَطْرَبِي الْمَنَازِلَ, "Camels." اِبِلٌ¹, "passing on from station to station." طَرَوْهَا لَيْلًا, "to enter it by night." عَلَى هَيْئَتِي, "as I was." اسْتَعْجَلُوهُ, "urge him to be quick." مَا جَت بِأَهْلِهَا, "was thrown into a state of commotion, the people moving to and fro in great excitement." يَتَوَارَى, تَوَارَى, "To hide one's self; abscond." بَزِيَّ الْحَمَامِ, "having the appearance of one just coming from a bath." أَحَدَاتُ, pl. of حَدَثٌ, "youths." سَلَامًا خَفِيفًا, "a brief salutation."²

45 اضْطَرَّابٌ, "did not ask me again." لَمْ يُعَارِدْنِي, "Com-motion." عَدَلْ بِهِ, "at once; immediately." حَالًا, "To take aside." جَبَّارٌ عَنِيدٌ, "standing." رَاقِفٌ, pl. of وَقُوفٌ, "a proud, contumacious person." يَشْخَصُ, شَخَصَ, "To leave (on a journey)." يَشْخَصُ, أَشْخَصَ, "To force one

¹ A quasi-pl. n., having no proper sing. ; it is of the fem. gender.

² i.e., "without ceremony."

to do so." يَرِيْبُ, رَابَ, "To create suspicion in the mind of a person." تَهَانٌ = اسْتَخَفَّ, "To hold in little estimation or account; think lightly of." تَبَخَّرَ, "To fumigate one's self." فَضَّهُ, "perfect; as it ought to be." فَضَّهُ, "opened it; broke its seal." أَنْ يُؤْرَعَ بِي, "to do violence on me." أَيْمَانًا غَلِيظَةً, "strong oaths." والعِثَاقُ, "and the emancipation of his slaves." والصدقة والوقف, "and the appropriation of his property to charitable and religious purposes." إِلَى أَنْ يُكْشَفَ لَهُمْ أَمْرٌ, "till they hear of something." بِالْمَضِيِّ إِلَيْهِ, "commanding me to go to him." وَاسْتَوْصُوا بِمَنْ وَرَائِي مِنَ النِّسَاءِ, "and treat the women I leave behind with kindness." 46 انْتَزَعَ, "A basket; box." الْغُوطَةُ, "The Campania." أَخْطَأْتُ فِرَاسَتِي, "To tear away." مَغْلُولًا, "in fetters." نَاصِيَةً, "I was wrong in my estimate of thee." فِيكَ, "Forelock." وَلَا يَمْلِكُ لِنَفْسِهِ النِّسَاءَ, "cannot do." رَمُونِي بِالنِّسَاءِ, "and my good faith or loyalty." نَاحِيَتِي, "accused me of." وَيَخْرُجُ مِنْ, "and will leave off or forbear": a better reading is وَيَتَحَرَّجُ مِنْ, "and will

avoid as a crime, etc.” شَارَفْنَا, “came in sight of.”

تَجَسَّسَ الْخَبَرَ, pl. of نَجِيبُ, “fleet camels.” النَّجْبُ

47 “To search for news; reconnoitre.” حَطَّطَ رَحْلِيَّ

“I alighted.” سَاقَ الْحَدِيثَ, “To give a consecutive account of.” الْمُبَادَرَةُ, “Hastening to do a thing.” *Line*

6, for الامور read الْأُمُورِ, يُسْفِرُ, أَسْفَرَ الْأُمُورِ, “To brighten.”

رَأَيْتُ مَاءَ الْحَيَاةِ الْغَـ, lit. “I saw the water of life move in his face” = “flushed with light; beaming with

brightness; radiant.” فَضْلُ هَيْئَةٍ, “Style; state; magnificence.”

XIX.

48 بَابُ خُرَاسَانَ, “The Stationer, or Copyist.” الْوَرَّاقُ

N.E. gate of Baghdād. خَلَا وَجْهَهُ, “To be at leisure; not

occupied with business.” خَلْوَةٌ, “Privacy or freedom; retirement.”

خُذُوا عَلَيْنَا الْبَابَ, “Secure the door; see that no one enters.”

وَدَّ كَانَ تَقَدَّمَ فِيهِ, “he had previously ordered.”

السَّتِيرَاتُ, “Singing-girls”: prop.

“Veiled females.” نُبَاكِرُ الصُّبُوحِ, “get up early for a morning-draught.”

وَلَا تَرِمِ, “and do not go away; or,

quit your place": from ^{أَشْغَفَ} ١. ^{يَرِيمُ} رَامَ, "most attached to." ^{أَسْتَهْتَرُ} بِفُلَانَةٍ, "He (a man) loves a woman so passionately as not to care what was said of him on her account." ^{تَقَدَّمَ} إِلَيَّ, "To give one's word to; promise." ^{فِي غَيْرِ شَيْءٍ}, "doing nothing." ^{وَفِيَّ} بِقِيَّةٍ, "and yet I have still a reserve of strength; am not yet quite exhausted; can still keep up." ^{لَا وَجَهَ لِي}, "There is no sense, or meaning, in." ^{أَمْحَابُ الذُّبَّةِ}, "the 49
guardsmen on duty." ^{لَا ضَيْرَ}, "Never mind." ^{مَقَابِضُ},
"Handles." ^{وَتَبَيَّنَتْهُ}, "and knew, found out, what it was." ^{طَسَّتْ}, "To ponder on a thing." ^{تَرَوَى فِي الْأَمْرِ},
"A basin; saucer; dish." ^{وَمَنْاصَ مَرْصُومَةٍ}, "and couches
or chairs arranged in rows, or set close together." ^{جَلَبَتُهُ},
"on the seat nearest the door." ^{فِي أَدْنَى مَجْلِسٍ},
"noises; din." ^{وَالذَّدَّ}, "and ambergris." ^{تِمَالُ عَاجٍ} ٢,
"an image of ivory." ^{تَتَهَادَى}, "walking gracefully."
^{بَقْدٍ يَزْرِي عَلَى الْغُصُونِ}, "with a figure so lithe and supple

1 Mostly used in negative phrases.

2 A perfume composed of musk, ambergris, and the wood of aloes."

as to put the [willow] branches to shame." وَاللَّهُ لِي
وَقَعَ إِلَيَّ, "God is witness betwixt me and thee." وَلَكَ

- 50 "To reach one (news, etc.)." عَلَى وَتٍ, "in time; not
late." حَمَلَنِي النَّبِيدُ, "at a late hour." وَفِي وَتٍ ضَيْقٍ
"I was carried or influenced by wine." أَكْسَبَنِيهِ, "that
made me commit it." أَلْهَمَنِيهِ, "that has inspired me
to do it." مِنْ أُمَّنَائِهِمْ, "of their trusted ones": pl.
of أَمِينٌ "Honest; loyal." إِنَّ لِلدَّاحِلِ دَهْشَةً, "A visitor
is bashful and timid." وَفِيَّ انْقِبَاضٌ, "and I feel some
reserve." مِنْ ضَبْطِهَا, "(whether more to marvel) at her
accuracy." الْحَصْرُ, "Inability to speak through confu-
sion." أَصَغَى إِلَيَّ, "I began to recite." إِنْ دَفَعْتُ أَنْشِدُ
حَتَّى أَتَيْتُ عَلَى مَا فِيهِ مَقْنَعٌ, "To listen attentively."
أَبْدَأُ, "till I had gone through a sufficient quantity."
وَأَيَّامِ النَّاسِ, "and historical
السُّوقَةِ, "Commoners." سَرِيٌّ, "Excellent." إِنَّ الْمَمَالِكَةَ أَوَّلُ الرِّضَاعِ
"Eating with one at the same table is the beginning, or
first stage, of foster-brotherhood." يَعْدِرُ, عَدَرَ, "To
be backward, remiss": here, "to eat sparingly." اِعْتَنَمَ,

يَغْتَذِرُ, "To enjoy; take delight in": "To drink in the beauties of." وَقَدْ عُمِيَ الْخ, "Everything was arranged, etc." تَنَاقَلَ عَنْ, "To keep from; hold back; be slow, reluctant." تَعَطَّلَ عَنْ, "To keep or stay away." عَزَمَ عَلَى, "To invite." مِنْ خَامَّةٍ أَخْدَانِهِ, "one of his most intimate friends": pl. of خَدْنٌ. — قَرِيبَةٌ, "Intellect." وَطِيعَ كَرِيمٌ, "and a gifted mind." يَبْرُزُ, يَبْرُزُ, "To excel, surpass, one's fellows; to outstrip in a race." تَحَرَّكَ 52 بَعْضَ الْمَلَاهِي, "play on some musical instrument." لَمْ أُرْزَقْهُ, "it was not given me," i.e., "I could not master it." فَلَمَّا طَالَ عَنَائِي بِهِ, "when I had long laboured at it to no purpose." وَلَمَّا أَزْهَبَ أَذْهَبَ, "and the more I ... the farthest was I from it." وَأَنْتِ أَوْلَى مِنْ الْخ, "and a noble lady like thee owes it to herself to, etc." مَعَ صِحَّةٍ أَدَاءٍ, "with perfect execution." يَحِبُّوْهُ حَبًّا, pl. of خُلَّةٌ, "Qualities." رَائِعٌ, "Admirable." (with ب) فَنَ لِمَنْ هَذَا الصَّوْتُ, "by whom this air was composed." الْمَجَالِسُ بِالْأَمَانَةِ, "for social meetings are confidential."

وَوَضَعْتُ رَأْسِي, "and
 بَادَرْتُ الْبَيْتَ, "I hurried home."

جَفَوْنَاكَ الْخ, "We have acted uncivilly to thee."¹ slept."

53 أَكَّرَ عَلَيْنَا تَخْلِيَتَكَ, "He took us to task for letting

thee go." لَا كَانَ لِي حَبْسٌ وَلَا تَرِيْتُ, "Nothing shall

detain or delay me." هُنِيْهَ, "a short while." ثَقَلَ,

مَادِحُ نَفْسِهِ يُقْرِئُكَ السَّلَامَ, "To bore; be wearisome."

"Mr. Self-praiser gives thee his compliments (=

Never sound the trumpet of your own praise)."² بَنِمَ,

في هذا البيت, "Wonderful! all praise be to him!"

in this song," lit. "verse." عَمِيقُ الْعَنَاءِ, "perfect in his

54 singing; master of his art." فَمَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ الْخ, "as soon

as." مَا إِلَى ذَلِكَ, "to give us tit for tat." مَكَانَةً لَنَا,

وَأَحَدَةً بِوَأَحَدَةٍ, "That wasn't my intention." ذَهَبْتُ,

وَأَلْبَادِي أُظْلَمُ, "Tip for tap! and he is more to blame

that first begins."³ تَتَرَيَّبُ, "Blame." يَصْطَبِخُ, إِصْطَبَحَ,

"To take a morning draught." نَقَضَ عَلَى,

"To be rest-cross; run counter to." قَامَ وَقَعَدَ,

¹ Lit. "placed my head on the pillow."

² Said to a person who sings his own praises. Cf. also, "Self-praise is no commendation."

³ Lit, "One (stroke) for another and the beginner is the more wrongful in conduct."

- less." جَالَتْ وَسَاوِسِي, lit., "disquieting thoughts began to revolve, or arose, in my mind."¹ مَوْجِدَةٌ, "Anger; passion." مُطَالَعْتِهِمْ, "to confer with them; speak to them." لَمْ أَرْتَدَّ عَنْهَا حَاسِرًا,² "I turned not; never slackened." فِي حِلٍّ مِنْ دَمِي, "free to kill me." يَقُولُ بِالْغَاوِ, "who admires singing." 55
- وَحَسَنَةٌ مِنْ حَسَنَاتِهِ, lit. "one only of his many excellences." طُفَيْلِيٍّ وَمُقْتَرِحٍ,³ "Art thou a parasite and an importunate one?"⁴ الْمُحْكَمَةُ, "the one to decide; arbitress." سَحَبْتُ, "I was dragged." حَرِدَ, "Angry; enraged." يَنْتَحِي, يَنْتَحِي, "To retire; withdraw to a distance." لَا بُدَّ أَنْ تَتَلَطَّفَ إِلَيَّ, "Thou must find means." 56
- أَنْ تُظَاهِرَ بَرِّي, "to treat me with deference (as befits a cousin)." أَنَا أَكْفَيْكَ, "the pride of sovereignty." نَخْوَةُ الْخِلَافَةِ, "I'll come to the rescue." لِكُلِّ جَدِيدٍ لَدَدٌ, "Every

¹ "My thoughts began to tempt and try me."

² Lit., "I turned not from her, wearied or fatigued," i.e., I went on knowing no fatigue.

³ A close equivalent to "thrown into the shade; not fit to hold a candle to."

⁴ Said to an intruder making impertinent requests.

- thing new has a charm.”¹ أَخَذَ فِيّ, “To enter into discussion.” وَيُقْحِمُهَا, “and silenced her by his arguments.” لَغَرِيْبَانِ, “out of the common.” مَوْعِدَكَ, “Thy promise!” viz., “that his friend should sing.” إِنَّهُ لَمُجِيبٌ, “He is willing; nothing loth.” صَوْتُ, “An air.” اقْتَرَحَ عَلَىّ, “To ask one to do a thing.” رَطْلٌ, pl. أَرَطَالٌ, “A pint.” كَلَّةٌ وَلَا تَتَفَوَّهَ بِهِ, “a curtain let down or hanging.” “and do not mention it, or breathe a word about it.” مَا أَظُنُّ مِنْ يَتَهَيَّأُ لَهُ أَنْ, “I do not think it is possible for any one to.” أَكْثَرُ مَنْ أَنْ يَقَعَ عَلَيْهِ إِحْصَاءٌ, “innumerable; more than can be counted.” خَنَى, “Obscene language.” مَذْهَبٌ, “Motive; incentive.” لَا لِرِيْبَةٍ تَذْكُرُ الْحَـ, “not with the design of doing any evil or blameworthy action.”

XX.

- نَكَّتَ, يَلْهَجُ, لَهَجٌ, “To be addicted, devoted, to.” pl. of نَكَّةٌ, “Strange adventures.” طَرْفٌ, pl. of طَرْفَةٌ, “Wonderful stories; curious incidents.” دَجِيلٌ,

¹ Cf., “Everything new is fine.”

“The Little Tigris.”¹ ضَرَبَ حَلَقَةً, “To form a circle for the chase.”² يَحْدُونُ الصَّيْدَ, “to drive or beat up the game (by ranging).” مَجَالٌ, “room for moving about.” وَتَأَنَّقُوا فِي الْقَتْلِ, “To be hemmed in; confined.” دَوَّغَ, “and kill at their leisure, or as they pleased.” دَوَّغَ, “branded”: from the Pers. دَوِیدار — داغ, “Secretary.”³ الْجُلْهُمَةُ, “Al-Julhumah.”⁴ وَسَمٌ, “Mark; stamp; brand.” حُدُودٌ, “about; nearly.” بَازِيَارٌ, pl. بَازِيَارِيَّةٌ, P. بازيار, “Falconer.” أَبَاقَا, “Abāqā.”⁵ كَرَايٌ, pl. of كُرَايٌ, “Cranes.” عَلَى سَمْتٍ مُسْتَقِيمٍ, “in a vertical line.” جَهَانُ كُشَايٍ, “White falcon.” شَاهِيْنٌ, “Jahān Kushāy.”⁶ مُسْتَبَعْدٌ, “Extent; space.” أَمَدٌ, “Improbable.” وَأَطْلَقُوا, “and gave (or assigned).”⁷ اِقْطَاعَاتٌ, “Grants in fief.” وَسَهَّلُوا عَلَيْهِمْ حِجَابَهُمْ, “and made them-

¹ Name of a canal above Baghdād, on the right or western bank of the Tigris. Its course may still be traced on the modern maps.

² A circle more or less extended formed by hunters, within which a large number of animals of the chase are usually inclosed.

³ A compound formed from *dawāt* changed to *dawī*, “inkhorn,” and the Pers. suffix *dār*, “holder, master.”

⁴ Name of a village between Baghdād and Hillah.

⁵ Abāqā, of the Il-khāns of Persia; successor of Hülāgū, (663-80 A.H. 1265-81 A.D.)

⁶ A Persian history of the Moghul empire, from the rise of Chingīz Khān to the year 654 of the Hijrah. Author: Khwājah ‘Alā’u-d-Dīn ‘Atā Malik Juwainī.

⁷ —especially when this is done on a liberal scale.

- 59 selves easily accessible to them.” رَتَقِلُّ الْمَبَالَةَ, “and to make them less scrupulous, or make them think little of.” اَرَقَّ , يَرِقُّ , اَرَقَّ , “To shed (blood).” وَغَصَبَ , حَرَكَةُ رِيَاضِيَّةٌ , “and taking away lives.” النُّفُوسِ , “heal- thy, physical exercise.” الْجَوَارِحُ , pl. of جَارِحَةٌ , “Beasts or birds of prey.” غَرِيزِيٌّ , “Natural.” اَسَاوِرُ , pl. of اِسْوَارٌ , “Bracelets.” جَلَّ , pl. of جُلٌّ , “Covering ; cloth ; trappings.” جِنَايَةً , “wrongfully.” ضَرَبَ مُخِيْمَةً , “encamped ; pitched his tent.” يَشُدُّ , شَدَّ , “To stray.”
- 60 تَعَهَّدَ , “To look after ; attend to.” سَوَّرَ , “To adorn with bracelets.” كَصَغِيرٍ , “like a little one.” بِكُلِّ مُمْكِنٍ , “in every possible way.” بِنْتُ شَفْعَةٍ , “a word.” تَقَدَّمَ , “ordered.” بَ ,

XXI.

THE CONQUEST OF SPAIN.

الْأَنْدَلُسُ , “Andalusia.”¹ لَدَرِيْقٌ .² الْمُقْتَبِسُ , “Roderic, the last of the Goths.” صَحِيْحُ النَّسَبِ فِي الْقَوَاطِرِ

¹ The name of Andalusia is applied by the Arabs to the whole peninsula of Spain.

² A history of Spain by Ibn Hayyān of Cordova, one of the best Spanish-Arab historians (377-469 A.H., 987-1075 A.D.)

“ a genuine, natural-born Goth ” : القوط , “ The Goths.” التَّسْوِرُ , “ Usurpation.” اَعْطَشَةُ , “ Witiza.”
 وَكَانَ أَثِيرًا لَدَيْهِ مَكِينًا , “ He was high in his favour and greatly beloved by him.” فَاصْغَرَ أَوْلَادَهُ لِمَكَانِهِ وَاسْتَمَالَ طَائِفَةً , “ He looked upon his (Witiza's) sons as not worthy the place of their father, i.e., the throne, on account of their youth and inexperience; so he gained over a number of persons, who took his part ¹ and sided with him, etc.” وَاسْتَبَقَاهُمْ , “ but spared their lives.”
 مِنْ تَلْقَاءِ بَحْرِ الرِّقَاقِ , “ plotted against him.” دَبَرُوا عَلَيْهِ , “ by way of the Straits of Gibraltar; from the opposite shore of the strait.” يُوْدِي , أَوْدَى , “ To perish.”

¹ This extract is taken from Wright's *Arabic Reading-Book*, p. 47. Both in the latter work and in the Leyden edition of *Nafḥat-Ṭib*, where the extract is originally to be found, the reading in the above passage is **وَاسْتَمَالَه** ,— a reading not at all satisfactory, as it would mean that Roderic himself was gained over by a party. On page x. of the preface to his reading-book, Wright proposes another reading. He says: “ We should probably read, as Professor Fleischer proposes **وَاسْتَمَالَتْ طَائِفَةً** ; Roderic treated the children of Witiza with contempt, on account of his high position and because he had gained over a number of persons, etc.” To render this passage thus, is to unduly stretch the meanings of words; while the construction of the sentence would be open to objection, as not being in accord with the usage of the best writers. If the author had meant the pronoun in **لِمَكَانِهِ** to refer to Roderic, he would, as may be expected from a writer of his rank, have repeated the pronoun in the next sentence and said **وَاسْتَمَالَتْ طَائِفَةً** . By referring the pronoun to Witiza, and reading **وَاسْتَمَالَ** , all difficulty disappears.

وَادِي لَكَّةَ , “comes, reverts, to them.” وَيَخْلُصُ إِلَيْهِمْ
 “The Guadalete.” الْجَزِيرَةُ الْخَضْرَاءُ , “The Green Is-
 land”: it is still called Algezire. الْقِبْلِي , “southern.”
 أَقْصَى فُتُوحِهِمْ , “on the seventh of.” لِسَبْعِ خَلَوْنَ مِنَ النِّجْ
 “their furthest conquest.” وَمِصْدَاقُ مَوْعِدِ نَبِيِّهِمْ , “and the
 fulfilment of their Prophet’s promise.” مَلْعَم , abb. of
 أَنْجَزَ , الْكَفِيلِ بِ , صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ , “who guaranteed.”
 “To fulfil a promise.” وَقَامَ بِأَمْرِ الْعَرَبِ , “administered the

- 61 مِنْ قِبَلِ affairs of the Arabs; acted as their governors.” طَرَأَ
 طَرَأَ , أَيْمَةَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ , “by, as lieutenants of, the Caliphs.”
 دَوْلَةِ بَنِي أُمَيَّةَ , “throughout the reign of the Omayyad
 dynasty.” طَرَأَ إِلَيْهَا فَلَهُمُ النِّجْ , “the fugitive ‘Abdu’r-
 Raḥmān appeared there, or made his way thither”:
 النَّبِيَّ أَوْرَثَهَا عَقِبَهُ , “The remnant of a routed army.”
 “which he passed, or left, to his descendants; which
 remained in his line.” حَقْبَةً , “for a long number of
 years.” مِنَ لَدُنْ , “from; beginning with.”
 بِالصَّيْتِ فِي الصِّ , “which spread far and wide the report
 of.” الْمِلَّةُ الْحَنِيفِيَّةُ , “The religion of Islām; the law

of Abraham.”¹ خَزَلَهَا عَنْ, “separated, severed it from.”
 وَجَرَدَ إِلَيْهَا, “and sent to it.” مَعْنِيَتِهِ بِهَا, “of his especial
 care.” وَوَقَعَتِ الْمَقَاسِمُ فِيهَا النِّجَاحَ, “the division of territory
 among the warriors was made under his direct orders.”
 — مَلْصَصٌ, سِيَاقَةُ النِّجَاحِ. رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ, abb. of رَحِمَهُ, رحمة,
 “Summary.” بَلٌّ هُوَ بَكْرِيٌّ, “He is a man of the tribe
 of Bakr, and not a freedman or *maulā*.”² عَلُوجٌ, pl.
 of عَلِجٌ, “Barbarians.” رَهْنٌ, pl. of رَهْنٌ, “Hostages.”
 وَصِيفٌ, “A slave.” فَمِنْ هَذَا يُخْتَلَفُ فِيهِ, “hence the
 difference as regards his origin.” لَخْمِيٌّ, “of the
 tribe of Lakhm.” عُقِدَ لَهُ, “was appointed governor.”³
 فِي نَفَرٍ قَلِيلٍ مِنَ الْمُطَوَّعَةِ, “with a
 small band of volunteers”: orig. الْمُطَوَّعَةُ. — بَعَثَ,
 “An army; expeditionary force.” عَمَلُهُ, “his pro-
 vince.” وَصِيْرٌ عَلَى, “Hardiness; endurance.”
 وَمَقْدَمَتُهُ, “and placed at the head of his vanguard.”

¹ Not connected with Abū Ḥanīfah, the relative adjective from which is Ḥanafī, and not Ḥanifī.

² The *Mawālī* “clients” were the non-Arab Muslims. No pure Arab could be a *maulā*.

³ Lit. “A banner was tied for him to a spear”; the official procedure on appointing to a command.

⁴ The region about Carthage, the ancient Roman province of Africa.

وَيَقْضُ جُمُوعَهُمْ, "and scatter their numbers; put their armies to rout." طَنْجَة, "Tangier."

قَصَبَةُ الْمُلْكِ, "The seat of government of a country."

وَأَمَّ مَدَائِنَهُمْ, "and their chief city." خَطَّهَا قَيْرَوَانًا, "He chose

it for a garrison town." لِصَاحِبِ الْأَنْدَلُسِ, "lieutenants

62 of the king of Spain." سَبْتَة, "Ceuta." يُلْيَانُ, "Julian."

فَلَمْ, "but found him in great force." فَأَلْفَاهُ فِي نَجْدَةِ الْخِمْ,

تَخَلَّفَ إِلَيْهِمْ بِالْمِيرَةِ, "he could not overcome him." يُطَقُّ,

وَالْأَمْدَادُ, "bring them provisions and reinforcements."

يَحْمِي, حَمَى, "To protect." ذَبَّ عَنْ,

إِضْطَرَبَ حَبْلُهُمْ, "To approve of one for a post." رَضِيَهُ لِ,

"Discord was rife among them." تَرَاضَوْا بِ,

وَمِنْ بَيْتِ أَهْلِ الْمُلْكِ, "of the royal house."

مُنْتَحَامَى الْفَتْحِ عَلَى الْأَيَّامِ, "Toledo." طَلِيْظَةٌ,

of which was scrupulously avoided in all ages." يَلْزَمُهُ,

"constantly guarded." وَقَدْ عَهَدَ الْأَوَّلُ الْخِمْ,

يَقِظًا, "vigilant; watchful."

أَوْ أَعْلَمَ, "until I know." الْعَجَمُ, "The Barbarians:

all non-Arabian nations are so termed." فَرِعَ إِلَى ,
 يَضْرَعُ , "To implore." تَابُوتٌ , "A chest; case."
 نَفَاسَةٌ , "by their value." شُقَّةٌ مُدْرَجَةٌ , "a roll, scroll; a
 piece of linen rolled up." الْعَرَابُ , "of pure Arab blood."
 تَتَنَّبُ , "To shoulder." رَايَةٌ, pl. رَايَاتُ , "Standard; flag."
 بِالْعَجَمِيَّةِ , "in a foreign tongue." يَجْمُ , وَجْمٌ , "To be silent

63 with grief, anger or fear." وَقَدْ كَانَ مِنْ سَيْرِ الْخِ , "It was
 a custom of." وَالْتَوَيْتَهُ بِهِمْ , "and to elevate their rank in
 society, or give them distinction." بَلَّاطٌ , "The court
 of a king." ¹ بَلَغَ , "To come of age; attain majority."
 رَكَبَ , "and paid" رَحَمَلٌ صَدَقَاتِهِمْ , "to win over." اسْتِنَافًا لِ
 رَكَبَ , "Females." اُنْثَى , pl. اُنْثَاتُ , "their dowries."
 اسْتَكْرَهَهَا , "followed the custom by sending" الطَّرِيقَةَ بِابْنَةِ لَهُ
 اسْتَكْرَهَهَا , "to the court a daughter of his." اَقْتَضَاهَا ,
 "He violated her; deflowered her by force."
 اَحْفَظُهُ جِدًّا , "made him exceedingly angry; roused his
 extreme indignation." حَمِيَّةٌ , "Indignation; zeal."
 اِمْتِعَافُهُ , "his vexation, anger." فِي يَنْيَرٍ , "in January."

¹ From the Latin *palatium*, "palace; imperial palace."

إِسْعَافَهَا, "to gratify her wish." اُمْنِيَّةٌ, "Wish; desire."

— اِسْتَفِرْ لَنَا مِنَ الشَّدَائِقَاتِ الْخَيْرِ, "Bring us royal falcons of the

best kind."¹ يَطْرِفُ, أَطْرَفَ, "To make one a present."

فَلَمْ آثُرْ جَوَارِحَنَا لَدَيْنَا, "our favourite bird (of prey)."

64 أَشْتَاتٌ, "different kinds of." اَشْتَاتَ, "he hesitated not...to."

ثَرَاةُ الْمِيَاهِ, اَلْمَرَافِقُ, "natural advantages."

"abundance of water." قِلَّةُ الْغَنَاءِ, "Impotence; weak-

ness; incapacity." فَتَشَقَّ مُوسَى, "and secured himself against treachery by

demanding that he [Julian] should divulge the matter

to, etc." عَقِبَ, "after." اَنْ خُصَّهَا بِالْغَرَايَا, "Saying,

Make a cautious attempt by sending small expeditions."³

وَدَارُ مِغَاظِهِمْ, "and their naval arsenal." سَبِيٌّ, "Women

65 taken in captivity." اَلْاَسْمُ, "the whole of it."

طَبَقُ الْكُنْيَةِ, "the name equally well-known as the

surname."⁴ وَبَاشْرُوهُ مِنْ طَيْبِهَا, "and the evidence of

¹ *Fārih*, adj., "The best of its kind."

² The text has *shawwaqa*; a wrong reading.

³ The idea of caution is inferred from the use of the word *khāḍha* 'to wade.'

⁴ i.e., he is known equally well both by his name and surname.

fertility they have everywhere observed." مَدَف
 name of a tribe. بَعْضُ عَقْبِهِ, "some of his descendants."
 وَلَاءُ مُوسَى, "his clientage to Mūsā." نَفَرَةٌ, "Nafazah :
 a Berber tribe." لَا صِغَاعَةَ لَهُ غَيْرَهَا, "these being the only
 ships he had." أَغْشَتْ, "The month of August." تَوَانُوا,
 "their full complement arrived." مِنْ السَّنَةِ, "of the
 same year." أَجَازَهُمْ, "sent them across." أَرَلًا أَوَّلًا, "in
 small detachments." عَالِمٌ بِالْحَدَثَانِ, "one knowing
 the future." ضَخْمُ آلِهَامَةٍ, "with a massive head." عَمَ,
 abbr. of عَلَيْهِمُ السَّلَامُ. غَلِبَنَّهُ عَيْنُهُ, "he dozed off." هَبَّ 66
 مُسْتَبَشِّرًا, "elated with joy." مِنْ نَوْمِهِ
 بَسِيطًا¹, "and he regained confidence." وَثَابَتَ إِلَيْهِ ثِقَتُهُ
 الْبِلَادِ, "the interior; the length and breadth of the land."
 الْبَشْكُنَشُ, "The Vascones." بَنَابِلُونَةَ, "Now Pamplona."
 مُبَادِرًا الْفَتْقَ², "whence the trouble came." مِنْهُ أَتَى
 "hastening to repair the breach." قُرْطُبَةَ, "Cordova."
 حِصْنُ الْمُدُورِ, "Almodovar del
 الْمَوْسُطَةِ, "The Middle."³

¹ Lit. "and his confidence returned to him."

² i.e., through the wrong done to Julian's daughter. Wright's reading *minhu atā* is erroneous.

³ The Arabs divided Spain into three main parts—the East, West and Middle.

- Rio." غَيْضَةٌ عَلَيَّ مَلْتَقَةٌ أَشْبَهُ "a dense, impassable thicket of brambles." حَجَلَةٌ "a partridge." عَنْ "To come in sight ; appear." كُدَيْةٌ "Hard ground ; rock." نَخَبَتْ "hid itself." بَعْدُ "in after times ; later." نَخَبَتْ "hid itself." بِالنَّحْرَةِ "in the wood, or thicket." ضَامًّا مِنْهُ بِهِ "as he was loath to lose such a valuable bird." رَأَتْهُ رَصَةً "admired its solidity, or compactness." أُسٌّ "Foundation." بِصَمِّ الْحَجَارَةِ "on the water side." وَمِنْ وَجْهِ الْمَاءِ "with hard, massive stones." زَرْجُونٌ "Vine-branches." 67 tore it." فِي زَحْفِهِ "and I am the man best fitted to restore it." فِي زَحْفِهِ "in his march, or advance, against." تَلَّاهُمْ "succeeded ; came next to." تَلَّاهُمْ "Troops ; armies." تَلَّاهُمْ "succeeded ; came next to." هَلَكَ عَنْ أَوْلَادٍ ثَلَاثَةً "He died leaving three sons." نَفَرَ إِلَيْهِ "set out to meet him." نَفَرَ إِلَيْهِ "To call or summon to war." تَرَعَرَعُوا "grew up." تَرَعَرَعُوا "and engaged men in their service ; raised a following." وَبَعْدَ نَهْرٍ "on the opposite side of the river." وَبَعْدَ نَهْرٍ "the preparations of Roderic were complete." وَبَعْدَ نَهْرٍ "Sea-

port." إِلَى الْبَحِيرَةِ, "to the Lake."¹ بِمَا لَا قِبَلَ لَهُ بِهِ, "with armies he cannot cope with." يُدْلِهِمْ عَلَى الْعَوْرَاتِ, "showing them the weak points." فَلَسْنَا نَعْدِمُ الْخُ —, "his rule will not fail to bring ruin upon us." فَلَنَنْهَزِمَ بِهِ, "so let us 68
run away (in the course of the battle) driving him off in our flight." وَالْقَضَاءُ يُبْرِمُ مَا ارْتَاوَهُ, "Fate itself impelling them to take this decision." أَدَارُوا عَلَيْهِ الْهَزِيمَةَ, "brought about his flight; compassed the rout of his army." صَفَايَا
الْمُلُوكِ, "crown or demesne lands, royal domains:" pl. of لَا كِفَاءَ لَهُ, "Tyrant; proud and insolent." طَائِغِيَّةٌ.² صَفِيَّةٌ, "unequalled; without parallel." أَشْرَفَ عَلَى, "To come in sight of." يَحْزُرُ, حَزَرَ, "To estimate." يَشُدُّ, شَدَّ, "To run." اسْتَشْرَفَ, "To espy; also, reconnoiter."
مَا تَحْتَ قَدَمَيْكَ, "the ground under thy feet, i.e., the country." الْقَلْبُ, "The centre (of an army)." عَدَرُوا بِشَيْءٍ مِنْ قِتَالٍ, "They fought half-heartedly 69
for a while." أَذَرَعُوا الْقَتْلَ فِيهِمْ,³ "They slaughtered

¹ Laguna de la Janda.

² Properly meaning, "That part of the plunder which a general takes to himself before a division."

³ *Adhra'a* (with *fī*), "To go to great lengths, be violent in."

them in great numbers." مَكْلَلٌ, "incrusted." يَسِينُ, سَاخَ,
 "To sink in the mud (foot)." حَمَاءٌ "Mire."

PART I. SECTION III. THE EBONY
 HORSE.

- 70 وَذِكْرٌ مَّانِعٌ, "and a dreaded name." سَافِرٌ, "shining."
 النِّيرُوزُ وَالْمَهْرَجَانُ, "The festivals of the New Year and the
 Autumnal Equinox."¹ سَرَايَا, "Palace." كَامِلُونَ فِي الْحَقَائِقِ,
 "versed in the knowledge of truths and perfect
 in subtleties." شَخْصٌ, "A figure." نَفِيرٌ, "A trumpet."
 71 أَن نَتَمَنَّى عَلَيْهِ, "Ingenuity." اخْتِرَاعٌ, "Virtue." فَضِيلَةٌ,
 72 "to prefer a request to him." وَتَدَاوَلَ بِهِ, "and be mem-
 bers of his family." قَرَارٌ, "Word; promise; decision."
 يَغْرِعُ, "strange, monstrous species." أُمَّةٌ غَرِيبَةٌ,
 الدَّجَاجُ فِي الْقِيِّ, "frightens poultry in hen-houses."
 أَزْشَقُ مِنَ الْغَزَالِ الْأَنِيفِ, "more graceful than the tender
 gazelle." يَمْعُلُ, عَالَ, "and outdoing." وَتَقْضِي عَلَى,
 "To support." خَطْبَنِي لِي, "has promised me in marriage."
 73 حَنْقَ عَلَى, "To and solaced her." وَأَخَذَ بِخَاطِرِهَا

¹ The *Nau-rūs* or *Nai-rūz* is the Persian New-Year's day. The festival began at the vernal equinox, and lasted six days. The *Mihrgān*, or, as the Arabs call it, *Mahrajān*, was the Sun-fête of the ancient Persians.

- bear one a grudge ; be angry, enraged." لَوَّبَ ,
 "Pin ; screw." إِلَى عَنَانِ السَّمَاءِ , "to the region of the
 clouds." كَيْفَ الْحَرَكَةُ فِي , "how to bring about."
 وَكَانَ يَوْمَ الْعَشْرِ وَاللِّقَاءِ , "Resurrection-day." ¹ , "was
 turned to." بَيْنَ الْأَفْلاكِ , "in the skies." مَاحِبَ لِبَاقَةٍ ,
 "a man of wit." نَاضِرَةٌ , "riant ; delightful to the 74
 view." تَدْرَحُ , "pacing daintily over the plains." شُرَفَاتُ
 "battlements ; turrets." لِابَسُوا الزَّرْدَ , "clad in mail."
 وَحَسَّ حَسِيسٍ , "sound 75
 of a living creature." عَفَارِيتُ سُلَيْمَانَ , "The Ifrits,
 or demons, of Solomon." رَهْطٌ , "a chieftain."
 أَطْوَلَ مِنْ خَشَبَةٍ , "longer than a pole, or staff."
 مَصْطَبَةٌ , "A bench." تَقْدُ , "burning." أَمْضَى مِنْ
 الْجُلُودِ , "Provision-bag ; table-cloth." سَفَرَةٌ , "shar-
 per than." مَجَلَّلَةٌ بِشَعْرِهَا , "drawn." مَسْبُولٌ , "Granite."
 وَفَرَّقَ يَبْهَرٌ , "and shining hair-parting."
 دَقَائِقُ , "like blood-red anemones." دَقَائِقُ , "dainty."
 وَهُوَ يَقْرَفُ , "trembling." شِرْكُ مَحَبَّتِهِ , "the idloatry 76

¹ Lit. "The day of congregation and meeting."

- of love.” وَهُوَ مَذْهُولٌ, “of high degree.” لَهُ شَأْنٌ عَظِيمٌ, “confounded.” وَأَدْرِكْ أَبْتَلَكَ, “and be brief.” وَرَأَوْجُزْ, “Come to thy daughter’s succour.” إِسْتَوَى عَلَيْهَا, “has got possession of her.” فَدُونَكَ وَإِيَّاهُ, “so up and at him.” هَذَا الْعَارِضُ, “this demon.” لَا يَتَعَاطَى الْقَبِيحَ, “does nothing unseemly.” كَأَنَّهُ الْغُولُ, “like a furious Ghoul.” أَرْثَبُ مِنْهُ, “with a terrible cry.” مَيِّحَةٌ مُنْكَرَةٌ, “doughtier than he.” أَرَعَى ذِمَامَكَ, “respect thy right as my host.” وَهَتَكَتْ حُرْمَتِي, “and smirchest mine honour.” وَمِنْ قِلَّةِ بَصِيرَتِكَ, “her husband.” بَعْلَهَا, “and at thy short-sightedness.” أَثَبَّتَ جَنَانًا, “a stouter-hearted man.” وَأَكْثَرَ مَكَافَاةً, “or a better match.”
- 78 بَيْنَ عَلَى رُؤُسِ الْأَشْهَادِ, “publicly; before witnesses.” مَصَدِّقٍ وَمُكَذِّبٍ, “would be divided between belief and disbelief.”¹ يُبَارِزُ, “To meet in single combat.” أَمَوْنُ لِعِرْضِكَ, “the best means of preserving thy honour.” فَمِثْلِي مِّنَ الْخِ-

¹ i.e., some would believe the story, some would not: so extraordinary and improbable would it all seem.

- etc." وَأَضْمَرَ, "he was at heart assured that." وَمِنْ الْهَيْئَةِ, "and from dishonour." خَادِمٌ, "A eunuch." نَقَبَاءُ الْجَيْشِ, "the Captains of the host." مِصَاحُ, "Broadwords; 79 sabres." خَبَالٌ, "madness." وَتَأَمَّلَهُ, "and examined it." "and spare not 80 رَمِيَّةٌ سَهْمٌ, "a bow shot." وَلَا تَبْقِ عَلَيْهِمْ, "and their lives." وَالْقَدِّ الرَّجِيمِ, "and shapely form." تَطَاوَلَتْ, "settled himself on the back of." اسْتَوَى عَلَى, "all eyes were strained to see, etc." إِلَيْهِ الْأَبْصَارُ الْغَمُّ, "and took to her pillow." وَلَزِمَتْ الْوَسَادَ, "crying." إِخْتَلَى بِنَفْسِهِ, "To commune with oneself; 81 collect one's thoughts." صَنْعَاءُ, "Ṣan'ā', capital of al-Yaman." فَوَجَدَ الرَّمَادَ الْغَمُّ, "saw its threshold strewn with ashes." وَحَقَّقَهُ, "and was assured of his identity." يَا قُرَّةَ الْعَيْنِ, "a whole hour." سَاعَةً زَمَانِيَّةً, "O joy of my eye." وَمُهْجَةَ الْفُرَادِ, "and the life-blood of my heart." أَمَرَ بِأَلَا فَرَاخٍ, "bade hold high festival." تَطَايَرَتِ الْبَشَائِرُ الْغَمُّ, "the glad tidings flew through the city." وَالْكُوسَاتِ, "and kettle-drums." الْخَلَائِقُ, "all creatures." خَلَعَ عَلَيْهِ خِلْعَةَ الرِّضَى, "invested him with

a dress of honour in token of satisfaction."

- 82 **عَلَى غَرَرٍ**, "in danger." **مِنَ الْبُعَادِ**, "of separation." **وَهَاجَتْ**, "and remembrance of lovers." **وَذِكْرَى الْأَحْبَةِ**, "and his thoughts were stirred within him." **مِنْهُ الْبَلَابُ**, "in great concern." **وَهُوَ مَلْهُوفٌ**, "I will not keep." **يُنْصِتُ**, **أَنْصَتَ**, "To listen." **لِمَاذَا تَحْمِلِينَ هَمَّ مَنْ النِّعَمِ**, "Why wilt thou mourn for one who, etc." **هَذَا مِنْ النِّعَمِ**, "is he of those, etc.?" **فَذَهَبَ قَلْبُهُ النِّعَمِ**, "his heart melted."
- 83 **يَا فَنْدَةً**, "I have been made desolate by thee." **أَوْحَشَنِي**, **لَمَّا أَذَلَّجَ الصَّبَاحُ**, "O temptation of all the world." **الْعَالَمِينَ**, **أَقْسَمُ**, "To awake." **يُفِيقُ**, **أَنَاقَ**, "when day broke." **وَلَا تُدِئِنِي النِّعَمَ**, "I conjure thee." **عَلَيْكَ**, "and make me not taste." **هَلْ لَكَ أَنْ**, "wilt thou that." **وَأَوْثَقَهَا**, **رِبَاطُ**, "Rope; cord." **وَالرِّبَاطُ**, "and bound her securely." **حُبًّا وَكَرَامَةً**, "the procession of estate." **الْمَوْكَبُ**, "with joy and gladness." **وَالزَّمُورُ**, pl. of **زَمْرٌ**, "Flute; flageolet; pipe." **عِمَارَةٌ**, "a canopied litter."
- 85 **مَعَّ عِنْدَهُ**, "knew for certain." **هَدَدَ**, "To threaten."

- هَدِّىْ خُلُقَكَ, "Be calm; calm thy mind or passions."
- وَكَانَ بِالْأَمْرِ الْمَقْدَرِ, "Now, as fate would have it."
- عَبَقَ مِنْهَا الْمَكَانُ, "with which the whole place was impregnated." 86
- كَالْشَّمْسِ الضَّاحِيَةِ الْغَمِّ, "To examine."
- "as she were the sun shining in the clear sky."
- فَلَوْ نَلَيْتَ مِنِّي الْغَمَّ, "Hadst thou profited of me ..."
- دَخَلَ فِي عَقْلِهَا, "it commended itself to her reason."
- مَا يُرِيدُ بِهَا, "that he was her master."
- قَدْ ظَفِرَ بِهَا, "what he would with her." 87
- وَلَا يَتِمُّكَ مِنْكَ, "nor shall he ever have thee again."
- أَرْزَاقٌ, "wealthy." 88
- رَمَى بِهَا فِي الْخَزَانَةِ, "placed it in his store-house." 89
- حَاشَا, "tracking their trail."
- يَقْتَصُّ الْأَثَرَ, "Far from it."
- وَعَمَّا يُحْسِنُهُ مِنَ الصَّنَائِعِ, "and of his profession, or what craft he was skilled in."
- وَلَا الْمَشَاوِرَةَ عَلَيْهِ, "or consult him as regards the stranger."
- يَا كِسْرَوِي, "O subject of the Kistrā; O Persian." 90
- وَعَرَفُهُ, "his object is."
- فَلَاذَا جَنَّ عَلَيْهِ اللَّيْلُ, "and as soon as night falleth."
- فَلَكَ, "To sin against."
- جَنَى عَلَى, "thou shalt have of me." 91
- فِي خَلَاصٍ مُهْجَتِي

“to save my life; or, to rescue my beloved.” عَلَى يَدَيَّ ,

“through me.” تَخْتَبِطُ وَتَنْصَرِعُ , “writhing and falling

in convulsions.” اِحْقِنِي دَمِي وَدَمَكَ , “Have a care

92 for thy life and mine; spare my life and thine.” مَوْضِعُ ,

“place; situation.” عَارِضٌ مِنَ الْجُنُونِ , “is an attack

of madness.”¹ وَيُرِيْلْ هَذَا الْعَارِضَ عَنْكَ , “and so drive

away the evil spirit from thee.” بِسَعَادَتِكَ , “by thy

good fortune.” نَفَحَاتٌ , *lit.*, “breathings” (= healing

breath). اَعْقِدْ عَنْهَا الْعَارِضَ , “bind the evil spirit away from

93 her.” بِمِقْدَارِ مَدِّ الْبَصَرِ , “as far as the eye could reach.”

يَسَاوِي خَزَنَةَ مَالٍ , “With thy leave....” دَسْتُورُ عَنْ اِذْنِكَ الْغَمِّ ,

“worth a mint of money.” كَادَ يَنْفِزُ , “well-nigh burst.”

وَمَا زَالُوا بِهِ , “and they ceased not remonstrating

94 with him.” اَمِنَ عَلَيْهَا , “was free from anxiety

about her.” فَدَانَتْ لَهُ الْبِلَادُ , “his father-in-law.” حَمَاءُ ,

“the land submitted to him.” مَرِيٌّ , “Pleasant.”

هَادِمُ اللَّذَاتِ , “The Destroyer of delights, i.e., Death.”

¹ A form of madness supposed to result from possession.

وَالْمَلِكُ بِيَدِهِ وَالْمَلَكُوتُ, "and in whose hand is the domination of the world's visible and invisible."

PART I. SECTION IV.

I. ADVENTURES OF IBN BATUTAH,¹ ON HIS WAY TO CHINA.

وَالْفَتَى كَافُورًا, "and 95
 the eunuch Kāfūr." مَدَقْنَا الْحَمْلَةَ عَلَيْهِمْ, "we charged
 them vigorously." عَنْ آخِرِهِمْ, "to the last man."
 السَّاقِي, "The cup-
 bearer." نَقِيلُ فِيهِ, "to take our siesta." 96
 "The hot summer season." اَنْقَطَعُوا عَنِّي الْخ, "all but
 three gave up the pursuit." يَنْشَبُ, نَشَبَ, "To stick
 fast to; to be caught or entangled in." الرِّكَابِيُّ, "The
 stirrup-sword." التَّرْكُشُ, "Quiver." آخِرَ عَهْدِي بِهِمْ,
 "the last I saw of them." شَعْرَاءُ, "Grove; thicket."
 غَيْرَ رَمِيَّةٍ رَجُلٍ وَاحِدٍ, "as one man; simultaneously."
 مَتَدَرِّعٍ, "not in my armour." اسْتَأْسَرَ, "To yield one-

¹ A famous traveller, 703—779 A.H. (1303—1377 A.D.).

² *Lit.*, "suffered martyrdom": as he died fighting against infidels.

- self prisoner." مَاش = جَلْبَان, "Vetch." مَقْدَمُهُمْ,
 "their leader." عَشِيَّ النَّهَارِ, "in the evening." حَمَى
 لَكِي لَا يَأْخُذُهُ أَصْحَابُهُ¹, "intermittent fever; ague." مَرَعْدَةٌ,
 "so that his companions shall not take him to
 task on my account; blame him for my flight."
 97 أَنْ يَبْدُرَ, "A blue cloth." مَنِيْرَةٌ, "Hemp." قَنْبٌ,
 أَنْصَتَ, "to change their mind." لَهُمْ,
 شَجَرُ أَمِّ غِيلَانَ, "Acacias." شَجَرُ أَمِّ غِيلَانَ, "it led me to." بَيْتِي إِلَى
 مُزْدَرَعَةٍ قُطْنَا, "planted with cotton." مُزْدَرَعَةٍ قُطْنَا, "Lotus-tree." السَّدرُ
 98 بَائِنٌ, "Castor-oil plant: palma Christi." الْخِرُوعُ,
 الْقَبَابُ وَالسَّقَائِفُ, "pavilions and
 cased (well). مَطْوِيَّةٌ,
 عَسَائِمُ الْخَرْدَلِ, "twigs of mustard." عَسَائِمُ الْخَرْدَلِ,
 سَقَطَتْ لِمَنْ غَسَلَهَا, "which some one had dropped when
 washing them." طَمَسَ اللَّهُ أَبْصَارَهُمْ دُونِي, "God blinded
 them, prevented them from seeing me." قَدْ مَرُّوا,
 وَفِي بَعْضِ هَذِهِ الْأَيَّامِ = وَفِي بَعْضِهَا, "the
 gone away." النَّجِيلُ.
 بَيْتٌ, "a little strength." يَسِيرُ قُوَّةً, "Purslane."

¹ Fever combined with an attack of shivering.

² Evidently the Hindi word *bā'oli*, "A large masonry well, generally with winding steps down to the water, and landing places and chambers in the surrounding wall."

- “Room; chamber.” شِبْهٌ خَابِيَةٌ, “a kind of a large jar.”
 طَلِيعَةٌ, “A scout.” اِمْتَصَّ, “To suck.” فَلَمْ يُرَوِّني, “did 99
 not quench my thirst.” كَاهِلٌ, “Space between the
 shoulders; back.” اَنَا تَائِهٌ, “I have lost my way.”
 حَسْبُنَا اللَّهُ, “a hand-full of chick-peas.” غُرْفَةٌ حَمَصٍ
 رَنِعَ الْوَكِيلُ, “God is enough for us, a good guardian
 is He.”¹ الْجَامِدَارُ, “Keeper of the wardrobe.” 100

II. IBN BATUTAH'S ACCOUNT OF THE MALDIVE ISLANDS.

- وَهِيَ مِنْ ذِيْبَةِ الْمَهَلِ, “The Maldive Islands.”²
 — التَّقَارُبُ بِحَيْثُ الْخِ, “they lie so close to each other that...”
 الْمَعْبَرُ, “miss the way to these islands.” 101
 اَقَالِيْمٌ, pl. of اِنَالِيْمٌ, “Divi-
 sions (of a country), regions.” اَنْلِيٌّ, a species of
 millet.³ الْمَهَلُ, “The Mali or King's Island.” اللِّيْرُونُ,⁴
 “Bonito fish.” قُلُبُ الْعَامَسِ, — اَلْاَنْعَامُ, pl. of نَعَمٌ, “Camels.”
 مَكَاثِلُ, “Baskets.” عَدَقٌ, “Bunch, cluster; raceme.”

¹ Qur'ān, iii. 167.

² The native name is *Mahaldib*.

³ The definite article is required by the construction. The word is of Maghribi, i.e., North African, origin.

⁴ The native name of this fish, according to François Pyrard de Laval, is *cobolly masse*, which he says means “black fish.”

الْجَمُونُ, "Jambu : the rose-apple tree." الْإِطْرِيَّةُ, "Ver-

micelli." اَلْكَلْمُ حَلَالٌ, "They earn their living by honest

labour." سِلَاحُهُمُ الدُّعَاءُ, "Their weapon is prayer."

102 أَجْفَانُ, "Ships." مُبَرِّحٌ, "Severe." تَنَزَّهَ عَنْ,

"To abstain scrupulously from." الْغَالِيَةُ, "Galia

moschata." ¹ الشُّحُوبُ, "Paleness ; pallor ; being hag-

gard, altered for the worst, in consequence of work,

fatigue, etc. (countenance)." ثِيَابُ الْوَلِيَّانِ, "Chudders."

الْأَحْرَامُ, pl. of أَحْرَامٌ, "The dress assumed by Mohamme-

dan pilgrims." ² غُرَفَاتٌ, "Handfuls." أُسْطُوَانٌ, "Ves-

103 tibule ; portico." الْمَامَمُ, See Text. مُسْتَقَى, "Buc-

ket." نِصَابٌ, "Handle." التَّنْبُولُ, "The betel leaf

(= pan)." الْكَرْنَبَةُ, "Green cocoanuts." الْخِ,

"The profit of the treasury." الْبَنْدَرُ, "Bonded

warehouse." حَظًّا, "a portion." بِسَوْمٍ مَعْلُومٍ,

"at a fixed, definite, price." الْفَخَّارُ, "Earthen-

ware ; pottery." الْمَرَابُ, pl. of مِرْزَبَةٌ, "Hammers."

³ A perfume mixed or boiled with other perfumes.

⁴ It consists of two white cotton cloths, each 6 feet long by 3½ feet wide, one of which is girded around the waist, and the other thrown over the left shoulder and knotted at the right side.

أُعْطِيَ الرُّطْبَةُ, "is imbued with elasticity, or buoy- 104
 ancy." مَرْفٌ, "money ; currency." بَاعَ مِنْ, "To
 sell to." عَابَهُنَّ, "disfigured them." مَا بَيْنَ الْكُوعِ وَالْمَرْفِقِ,
 "The space between the wrist-bone and the elbow."
 تَقَعُ الشَّهَادَةُ, "evi- 105
 dence is taken." لَا يُسَمَّى, "do not name or fix."
 صِدَاقٌ مِثْلُهَا, "the dowry of
 women of her class." نِكَاحُ الْمُتَعَةِ, "Temporary mar-
 riage." مَجْبَاهَا, "and covers his feet." وَقَعْمٌ رِجْلَيْهِ,
 "their revenue ; taxes." يُجْعَلُ فِي خَشَبَةٍ, "is placed
 in a wooden cell."

III. SINDBAD THE SAILOR.—SECOND VOYAGE.

وَمَا بَقِيَتْ أَنْظَرُهُ, "and 106
 كامِلَ الْعِدَّةِ, "fully equipped."
 كَادَتْ مَرَاتِي تَنْفَطِرُ, "my gall
 I could no longer see it." لَوْلَا أَنْ أَدْرَكَنِي لُطْفُ اللَّهِ, "had not
 was like to burst."
 لَا حَوْلَ, "the grace of God come to my rescue."
 وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ, "There is no strength nor power but in
 God." لَا أَعْيَى, "insensible to anything around me." 107

¹ —as to the social position of the woman.

² There is no striving against fate (a deprecatory formula).

بِالْأَسْفِيدِ أَجِ الْعَالِ, "with ceruse of the highest quality."

أَقَيْسُ, "smoothness." نَعَلَمْتُ, "so I marked."

وَأَنِفَةٌ, "good" دَائِرَتُهَا, "to measure its circumference."

عَيْنُ الشَّمْسِ, "The sun ; rays, or disk, of the (pace)."

الرَّخُ, "The roc." يَرْقُ, "To feed its young (bird)."

ثَنَيْتُهَا وَفَلَلْتُهَا, "doubled it and twisted it."

108 وَقَفَ عَلَى, "I girt myself with it." تَحَرَّمتُ بِهَا,

حَيْلُهُ, "stood up." اِنْتَفَضَ, "To spread the wings (bird)."

اِحْتَكَّ بِالسَّمَاءِ, "lit. To shoot up." اِقْتَلَعَ,

"To rubbed itself against the heavens." فَرَبَّ عَلَى,

الصِّينِيَّ, "Porcelain." الْمَعَادِنُ, "minerals." catch."

عَمِلَ فِيَّ, "To have effect on." صَلَبُ,

سَحُوقُ, "Tall (palm)." أَنْعَى, "Vipers." pl. of أَنْعٍ,

109 الْقُدْرَةُ, "Providence." تَلَفَّتَ عَلَى,

إِشْعَرَ بَدَنِيَّ, "my flesh quaked and my hair stood on end."

أَقَمْتُ رَأْسِيَّ, "I raised my eyes to heaven."

دَائِعٌ, "Giddy." شَقَقَ, pl. of شَقَّةٌ, "Pieces; morsels."

يَجْلِبُ, "Fresh (meat, etc.)." طَرِيٌّ,

شَرَحَ, "a sheep." الشَّاةُ مِنَ الْغَنَمِ, "To bring ; import."

- “To cut in pieces; slice (meat).” يَنْتَقِي, أَنْتَقَى, “To pick out.” حَوَائِجُ, “Clothes.” أَنْ يَنْهَشَ مِنْهَا, “to tear 110 off a piece.” خَبَطَ, “Beating violently.” جَفَلَ, بِجَفْلٍ, “To take fright.” تَلَوَّتْ, “were stained.” أَهْوَى إِلَى, “To fall to, with haste or eagerness.” وَأَخْيَبَانَا, “what a disappointment!” الرَّجِيمُ, “the Accursed.” خَابَتْ تِجَارَتِي فِيكَ, “To retreat; recede.” يَنْكُصُ, نَكَصَ, “A losing bargain, indeed!” سَرِيَ عَنْهُ, “His countenance cleared up; his grief passed away.” نَابَهُ, “came to his lot.” حَرْبَةٌ, قَبْضَةٌ, “Handful.” حَرْبَةٌ, “Blade of a 111 spear.” وَيَعْقِدُ مِثْلَ الصَّمْغِ, “and it concretes, hardens like gum.” يَنْشَفُ, نَشَفَ, “To dry up.” الْكَرْكَدَنْ, “The rhinoceros.” الْجَامُوسُ, “Buffaloes.” فَيَعْلِقُهُ عَلَيْهِ, “and carry, *lit.* fasten, him on it.” مَشْكُوكًا, “fixed.” فَيَسِيحُ دِهْنُهُ, “his fat melts, *lit.* flows.”

THIRD VOYAGE.

- النَّفْسُ أَمَارَةٌ بِالسُّوءِ, “The soul, or the human heart, 112 is naturally prone to evil.”¹ فَهَمَمْتُ, “so I busied

¹ The literal meaning of *ammāratun* is “wont to command,” i.e., “it commands to the indulgence of pleasures and sensual appetites.”

- myself about it." **الْبَحْرُ الْعَجَاجُ**, "The roaring, dashing sea." **رَمَى مَرَايِهَا طَوَى الْقُلُوعَ**, "furled the sails."
- 113** "cast its anchors." **يَا رُكَّابَ السَّلَامَةِ**, "O passengers in the barque of Safety!" **عَسَفَتْ بِنَا**, "has driven us out of our course." **جَبَلُ الرُّغَبِ**, "the mountain of the Hairy." **مِثْلُ الْجَرَادِ الْمُنْتَشِرِ**, "numerous as locusts scattered abroad."¹ **الْكَثْرَةُ تَغْلِبُ الشَّجَاعَةَ**, "Numbers prevail over courage." **الْبَدُ**, "Felt." **مُسْتَوْحِشُونَ**, "they shun the company of men." **رَسَا عَلَى**, "stranded upon." **مُشِيدَ الْأَرْكَانِ**, "strong and tall; with lofty angles." **بَابٌ بِمِصْرَاعَيْنِ**, "a two-leaved gate." **حَوْشٌ**, "courtyard; square." **مِصْطَبَةٌ**, "Bench." **وَفِي دَائِرِهِ**, "all around it." **مِنْ ضُحَاةِ النَّهَارِ**, "from the forenoon." **قَدَارَتْجَتْ**, "trembled." **دَوِيًّا**, "a rumbling noise." **أَنْيَابٌ**, "A blaze of fire." **شُعْلَةٌ**, "Tusks." **مِثْلُ الْجَرَمَيْنِ**, "Lips (of a camel)." **مَشَافِرُ**, "like two barges." **وَجَسَنِي**, "and felt me." **الْقَهْرُ**

¹ Cf. Qur'ān, liv. 7.

- “trouble; anxiety.” **قَصَفَ رَقَبَتَهُ**, “broke his neck.”
يَقْسِمُ، فَنَسَخَ, “from the crown of his head.” **مِنْ قِمَّةِ رَأْسِهِ**,
 “To rend in two; joint.” **فَرَخَةٌ**, “Chicken.” **وَنَهَشَ**
مِنْ شَيْءِ الْإِنْسَانِ, “and gnawed his bones.” **عَظْمَهُ**, “than
 that a man should be roasted.” **هَانَ عَلَيْنَا**, “it had be- 115
 come a light matter to us.” **وَلَا يُشَوَى الْخَمْرُ**, “rather
 than our flesh should be roasted with fire.” **يُحَوَّلُ، حَوْلَ**
 “To transport.” **فُلَاكٌ**, “Raft.” **مُنْنَا شُهَدَاءَ**, “we die
 martyrs.” ¹ **كَانَهُ الْكَلْبُ الْعَقُورُ**, “like a rabid dog.”
وَاتَكَأْنَا عَلَيْهِمَا, “till they were red-hot.” **حَتَّى احْمَرَّا**, 116
 “and pressed upon them.” **فَانْطَمَسْنَا**, “and his eyes
 were destroyed.” **وَهُوَ يَتَحَسَّسُ**, “feeling for it with
 his hands.” **أَفْظَعَ حَالَةً**, “and more hideous.” **تُعْبَانُ**,
 “Serpent.” **فَمَا تَمَّتِ الْفَرَحَةُ**, “but our joy was of short
 duration.” **مِنْ هَذِهِ الْآفَةِ الْمَشْوُومَةِ**, “from this abom-
 inable monster.” **الْتَفَّ بِهِ الْخَمْرُ**, “it wound itself round 117
 the tree with him.” **لَمْ تَهْنُ عَلَيَّ رُوحِي**, “it was not
 a light matter to me to sacrifice my life.” **بِالْجَمِيعِ**,

¹ A person drowned ranks as a martyr.

- “with the whole.” فِي حُكْمِ الْأَمْوَاتِ, “in a state like that of the dead.” لَاحَتْ مِنِّي الْتِفَاتُهُ, “I happened to turn; I cast my glance.” لَوَحْتُ بِهِ, “made signs with it.” 1. جَزِيرَةُ السَّلَاطَةِ, “was revived, refreshed.” اِنْتَعَشَ, 118
 “so thou wilt ever bless me.” وَتَبَقَى تَدْعُو لِي, 119
 “in return for thy trouble.” فِي نَظِيرِ تَعْبِكَ, خَفَقَ,
 “To beat; throb (heart).” تَجَلَّدْتُ, “I armed myself with courage.” سِنَةٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ, “Slumber; drowsiness”:
 120 from the root وَنَسَ, حَقَّقَ فِي النَّظَرِ, “looked at me with a scrutinizing eye.” اِتَّصَرَّفَ فِي, “To dispose of.” بِمَعْرِفَتِي, “to the best of my skill.”

FIFTH VOYAGE.

- 121 اِنْهَمَكَ فِي اللَّذَاتِ, “To become immersed in pleasures.” اِنْتَهَابُ الْمَسَرَّاتِ, “seizing upon all opportunities for merry-making.” وَنَظَرْتُ عَلَيْهِ, “I set over it as
 122 superintendents.” سَحَبُوهُ, “they pulled it.” حَالَ, “To intervene between.” وَصَارَا حَائِمَيْنِ, “they flew in circles;

¹ One of the Maluccas or the Sunda Islands.

- hovered." أَخْطَأَ بِشَيْءٍ قَلِيلٍ, "missed her by some small matter." قَرَارُ الْبَحْرِ, "The bottom of the sea." مِنْ شِدَّةِ عَزَمِهَا, "in consequence of its vehement force." — وَطَيَّرَتِ الدَّفَّةَ الْغَمَّ, "making the rudder fly into twenty pieces." تَسَبَّطَ بِي, "threw in my way." قَدَّرَ لِي, "To cling to." يَقْدِفُ, قَذَفَ, "To row ; paddle." يَانِعَةٌ, "bearing ripe fruits." عَلَى آخِرِ نَفْسٍ, "at the last gasp." 123 مِثْلُ الْقَتِيلِ, دَافِقَةٌ, "running ; flowing." مُؤَزَّرٌ, "well-nigh dead." إِزَارٌ, "girt about." أَزَارَ, "A waist-cloth." لَعَلَّ ثَوَابَهُ يَحْصُلُ لِي, "it may be I shall win me a reward in heaven for helping him." عَلَى مَهْلِكَ, "at thine ease ; gently." قَرَطَ عَلَى رَقَبَتِي, "gripped my neck." إِسْوَدَّتِ الدُّنْيَا فِي وَجْهِی, "The world grew black in my sight." وَ إِنْ تَوَانَيْتُ, "and if ever I loitered." 124 بِقَطِینٍ, وَصَقَّیْنَهَا, "Gourds ; pumpkins." وَصَقَّیْنَهَا, "and cleaned it (by scooping out the inside)." خَمْرًا مَرُونًا, "pure wine ; strong wine." حَصَلَ شَیْطَانٌ مَرِیدٌ, "an obstinate fiend." نَصَارَ لِي نَشَاءُ الْغَمِّ, "I was exhilarated by intoxication." — وَ ارْتَخَتْ, "and he swayed to and fro." 125

- فَرَائِصُ, "side-muscles." مَا مَدَدْتُ أَنِّي الْغَمَّ, "I scarcely believed that ..." فَاخْتَلَطَ لَحْمُهُ بِدَمِهِ, "so that his flesh became mingled with his blood." يَا تُرَى الْغَمَّ, "I wonder if." كَأَنَّكَ مُطَلَّةٌ عَلَى الْبَحْرِ, "gave upon the sea." غَرِيبٌ الْغَمَّ, "meseemeth thou art a stranger to these parts." صَاحِبُ مَالٍ وَنَوَالٍ, "a man of wealth and substance." مِخْلَافَةٌ, "A bag." زَلَطٌ, "smooth pebbles." الشَّطَّ, "I will associate thee with them." أَرْفُكُ بِهِمُ, "the mode of gathering." جَوْزُ هِنْدِيٍّ, "Cocoanuts." يَتَوَاصُونَ بِيَّ, "commend me to one another." يَلْمُ دَلَمٌ, "and that pleased me." وَلَاقَ بِخَاطِرِي, "The Qamārī aloes-wood." الْعُودُ الْقَمَارِيَّ¹. جَزِيرَةُ الْعَسِرَاتِ, "Cinnamon." أَعْلَى مِنْ, "is better than." عَلَى بَخْتِي, "Pearl-fisheries." مَعَاظِنُ اللُّؤْلُؤِ, "for my luck." فِي تِلْكَ الْبِرْكَةِ, "in the bay there."

¹ The name of this island (or peninsula) should be Qamār. Some writers have identified it with Cape Comorin; but from the accounts given of it by Arab geographers, it seems more likely to be a part of the Malayan Peninsula. See Lane's *Arabian Nights*, iii. 83.

IV. TRAVELS OF IBN JUBAYR ¹ IN SICILY.

مَسِينَةٌ, "Messina." مَوْسِمٌ, "A fair; market; meet- 129
 ing place." جَوَارِي الْبَحْرِ, "Ships."² تَغْصُّ بِقَاطِنَيْهَا, "It is crowded, or thronged, with inhabitants":³ تَطَنَّ, "To inhabit; reside at." وَتَكَادُ تَضِيقُ ذُرْعًا الْخَ, "it is almost inadequate, or unequal, to the requirement of, etc.": ذُرْعًا ضَاقَ (with ب), "To possess inadequate power, or resources, for." نَافِقَةٌ حَفِيْلَةٌ, "brisk and full of people, or well-stocked with goods." اُرْغَادُ الْعَيْشِ, "Making life easy or comfortable." غَرِيبُ الْيَدِ, "one writing a strange or foreign hand." يَنْصَرِفُ عَلَيْهَا, "over which people pass." فِي وَسْقِهَا, "in lading them." فِي مَرَابِطِهَا, pl. of جَوَادُ, "Horses; coursers." الْجِيَادُ الْبَحْرُ, "in their stalls." وَهُوَ: the pron. refers to الْبَحْرُ (= the Strait of Messina). زُقَاقٌ, "A narrow passage; a straits." الْاَرْضُ الْكَبِيرَةُ, "The mainland" (i.e., Italy).

¹ Born at Valencia, A.H. 540, A.D. 1145.

² From their running (*jarā*, to run) upon the sea: an adjective used substantively.

³ Lit. "choked up."

- جَبَلٌ, "Reggio." رِجَّةٌ, "A province." عَمَلَةٌ (= عَمَلٌ), "it is girt with clouds."¹ يَأْتُرُ بِالسُّحُبِ, "and is crowned, lit. turbaned, with snow." خَصْبٌ, "Fertility; richness of soil." ابْنَةُ الْأَنْدَلُسِ, "the Daughter of Hispania," i.e., a smaller Spain. شَاةٌ بَلوطٌ, "Chestnut." الْجَاوِسُ, "Pear." مِنَ ذَوِي الْمِرِنِ, "of the artizan class." الْقَضْرِيُونُ, "Palermo." بَلَرْمَةُ, "its capital." قَاعِدَةُ مُلْكِيهَا, "Townspeople; settled inhabitants." رِبَضٌ, pl. of أَرْبَاضٌ, "The quarters or districts of a city; suburbs." غُلَيَّامٌ, "William II. King of Sicily, surnamed the Good (1166—1189)." خَاصَّةُ الْمَلِكِ, "The court of a king; those who compose his retinue or council." اتَّسَعَ فِي, "To indulge freely in." الْمَرَائِبُ الْفَارِهَةُ, "magnificent mounts." خَوْلٌ, "slaves and other dependents." أَنْيَقٌ, "Pleasant; beautiful." حَاضِرَةُ الْمَلِكِ, "The capital; seat of Government." التَّرَفُ, "A life of ease and luxury." وَتَقْخِيمِ أَمْرِ الْمَلِكِ, "and in investing

¹ "It is so high that clouds reach only its middle": from *izâr*, waist-cloth."

the royal state with splendour and dignity.” أَكْرَمَهُ
 , أَرْزَاقٌ مَعِيشَتُهُ , “and provides him with ample means of
 subsistence.” سَلَّى عَنْ , “To make to forget ; console
 for the loss of.” وَعَلَامَتُهُ , “His motto.” دَارُ
 , “as great a praise as is due to Him.” صَنْعَةٌ , “Naval arsenal ; dock-yard.” أَصَاطِيلُ , pl. of
 , “Fleets.” فُنُودُ , pl. of فُنْدُقُ , “Hotel ; inn.”
 131 نَبْصَرُهُ رَأَى الْعَيْنِ , “we could see it plainly, or with the
 naked eye.” رُخَاءُ , “gentle (wind).” يَزْجِي , زَجَى ,
 “To drive.” سَرَحَ اللَّحْظَ , “To gaze with admiration ;
 let the eye roam over.” مَعَاوِلُ , “Strongholds ; castles.”
 قُنَنٌ , pl. of قُنَّةٌ , “Peaks.” ذَاتُ أَلْسِنٍ , “with tongues of
 flame.” مَنَافِسُ , “Openings ; vent-holes.” نَفْسُ نَارِيٍّ ,
 “a fiery breath.” شَامِعٌ , “High ; lofty.” كَالسَّيْلِ الْعَرِمِ ,
 “like a rushing stream or torrent.” ثَبَجُ الْبَحْرِ , “The
 middle or main part of the sea.” عَلَى مَقْعِهِ , “on its
 surface.” شَفْلُودَى , “Cepala.” مَجْرَى , “One day’s
 sail ; a distance of a hundred miles.” اِتَّخَذُوهَا عِدَّةً لِ ,
 “which they have built as a protection against...”

- يَفْجَأُ, فَجِئَ, "To surprise; come suddenly upon."
 رَوْدٌ, "slow; gentle." أَحْسَنُ وَضْعًا, "is better situated."
 حَمَّةٌ, "Thermal spring." الْخَصْبُ, "exceedingly fertile."
 132 island." رَادٍ, "River." يَنْحَسِرُ, "recedes."
 "and more." وَقَدْ أَخَذَ مِنَّا الْإِعْيَاءُ, "greatly fatigued."
 مِنْ عَهْدِ مَلِكَةِ الْخِـ, "from the time the island was in possession of..."
 وَوَعَالِيٍّ مُشْرِفَةٍ, "Opposite to it." وَبِازَائِهِ, "and towering chambers."
 pl. of عَلِيَّةٌ, "replete with every convenience." مُسْتَطِيلٌ, "Oblong."
 حَفَايَا, pl. of حَفِيَّةٌ, "A curved structure or building."
 بِنْنَا أَحْسَنَ مَبِيتٍ, "we passed a most comfortable night."
 سَقَايَةٌ, "Cistern; pool." تَقْفُورٌ بِمَاءٍ عَذْبٍ, "which jets out, or spurts forth, fresh water."
 133 pitals." وَادَيْنَا إِلَى, "at Acre and Tyre." بَعَكَةً وَبِصُورٍ, "and were conducted to the court of the officer who administers the oaths¹ in the name of the king."
 مَرَاتِبُ, "Halls; seats." يَرُوعُ, رَاعَ, "To

¹ Or, by reading *mustakhlaf*, "whom he, the king, had appointed as his lieutenant."

please ; excite admiration by its beauty (a thing)."
 بَلَّاطَاتُ , "Covered galleries." اِسْتِطَالََّةُ الْغَمِّ , "the length
 of." مَنَاظِرُ , "Belvederes ; large open halls." اَعْلُ
 الْعِمَالَةِ , "Governors ; officials." حَفَّ , "To go round ;
 surround ; serve." سَبَلَةٌ , "Mustache." ذَا اُهْبَةٍ , "of
 dignified appearance." اَحْفَى فِي , "To be lavish, pro-
 fuse." دِجَنْبَرُ , "December." اُمُّ الْحَضَارَةِ , "Metropolis ;
 capital city." غَضَارَةٌ وَنَضَارَةٌ , "affluence and charm."
 مَخْبِرُ , "The inward." مَنَظَرُ , "The outward."
 مُؤْنِقَةٌ , "Pleasing ; fascinating." تَتَطَلَّعُ بِمَرَأَى فَتَّانٍ ,
 "She appears proud in her charming aspect."
 تَخَايَلُ , "To walk proudly." بَسَاطُ , pl. of بَسِيطَةٌ ,
 "open space ; garden-plot ; parterre." بَارِعُ , "Perfect,
 surpassing (beauty)." قَرْطَبِيَّةُ الْبُنْيَانِ , "built in the
 Cordovian style." الْكَذَّانُ , "Tufa-stone." مَعِينُ , "Flow-
 ing, running (stream, water)." اِطْرَدَ , "To run, flow
 (river, water)." فِي جَنَابَتِهَا , "in its neighbourhood":
 pl. of جَنْبَةٌ , "side." قَدْ زُخْرِفَتْ الْغَمُّ , "His world has
 been made beautiful..." لَبَّةٌ , "The upper part of

- the breast.”¹ فِي نَحْرِ الْكَوَاعِبِ, “in the necks of fair damsels.”² مَقَامِيرُ, “Alcoves.” مَصَانِعُ, “Pavilions; fortresses.” دِبَارَاتُ, “Monasteries.” رِفْعَةٌ, “made to live in the midst of abundance.” اِقْطَاعَاتُ, “Fiefs; grants made by the sovereign.” صُلْبَانُ, pl. of صَلِيبٌ, “Crucifixes.” يَرْتَفِعُونَ إِلَيْهِ, “before whom they appear.” مَنَاطِرُ مُطَلَّةٌ, “commanding turrets or belvederes.” يَوْمَ الْمِيلَادِ, “on Christmas Day: the feast of the Nativity.” رِبْقَةُ الْقَطْعِ, “it is decidedly.” بِفُصُصِ الذَّهَبِ, “with small squares of gold.” الشَّمْسِيَّاتُ, “Windows.” تَخَطَّفُ الْأَبْصَارَ, “dazzle the eyes: *lit.*, snatch off.” سَاطِعٌ, “radiant; shining.” قَنَاطِيرُ, pl. of قَنْطَارٌ, “weird effect.” فَنَنَةٌ, “large quantities; many talents.” صَوْمَعَةٌ, “Steeple.” زِيٌّ, pl. of سَارِيَّةٌ, “Columns of stone.” سَوَارٍ, “Dress; style.” مَلْتَحِفَاتُ, “covered; enveloped

¹ Where the necklace or collar hangs.

² *Kawā'ib*, pl. of *kā'ib*, “Damsels with swelling breasts.”

³ The church commonly called Martorana, the work of George of Antioch, King Roger's admiral.

⁴ *Sawārīn* is in apposition to *a'midatin*, “on pillars, massive columns of ...”

(women).” مُنْقَبَاتٌ, “veiled (women)” : نَقَابٌ, “Face-veil.”
 لِحْفٌ, pl. of لِحَافٌ, “Covering.” التَّخَصُّبُ, “stain-
 ing the hands with *henna*.”¹ تَرَبَّةٌ, “Soil.” قَنْبَانِيَّةٌ, 135
 “Campania.” وَأَمْتَنُ, “and more solid, or excellent.”
 فَجَّرَهَا يَنْابِيعَ, “made them break forth as springs.”
 عُنْصُرٌ, pl. of عُنُصُرٌ, “Mineral substances.”
 العُدُوَّةُ : بَرُّ الْعُدُوَّةِ means “The passage of a river or
 straits” ; hence بَرُّ الْعُدُوَّةِ, “The littoral of Africa,
 whence the Arabs passed into Spain.” لَا يَتَعَطَّلُ,
 “never ceases ; is never interrupted.” إِلَّا رَيْتَمَا
 مَرَّافِقُ الْمَدِينِ, “save while waiting for...” الْعَمَلِ,
 “conveniences of town life.” فِي لَهَوَاتِ الْبَحْرِ, “in the mouth,
 or gorge, of the sea” : pl. of لَهَآءُ “Uvula.”
 تَرَاخَى, “opening wide its mouth.” فَآغَرَفَاهُ,
 “protracted ; lengthened out ; delayed.” مُرْفَقَةٌ,
 “convenient as a place of living.” لِرِخَاءِ السَّعْرِ بِهَا,
 “because of the low prices that rule there.” عَلَى
 مَحَرَثٍ عَظِيمٍ, “on an extensive ploughland, or plain.”

¹ *Laesonia inermis* ; also called “ Egyptian privet.”

- ركن, "Side; corner; angle." قنّة, "A small mountain; peak." أَحْسُوا, "detached, cut off from it." تَنْقَطِعُ عَنْهُ, "scent any danger." بِحَادِثَةٍ, "having short ropes, i.e., not deep." قَصِيرَةُ الْأَرْضِيَّةِ, "brackish water." شَرِيبٌ, "not easy or agreeable to swallow." لَا يُسَاغُ

V. DESCRIPTION OF SYRIA BY ABU 'L-FIDA.

1. تَيْهَ بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ, "The Mediterranean." بَحْرُ الرُّومِ, "East." 2. مَشْرِيقٌ, pl. of مَشْرِيقٌ in the sense of مَشَارِيقٌ, "The Campania of Damascus." الْفُرَاتُ, "The Euphrates." 3. وَمَا فِي سَمْتِهَا, "and all places on the same line." 4. تَشَاءُمُوا, "They took the direction of the left." 5. مُعْجَمَةٌ, "dotted." شَامَاتٌ, "Moles; spots." 6. وَقَعْتُ : better read وَقَعْتُ, "on Geography." 7. وَبِيٍّ, "Pestilential." 8. حَزَنٌ, "Rough, rugged (ground)." 9. عَفْرٌ, pl. of جَافٌ, "Harsh; rough." 10. بَعْرٌ, "River."

1 The place or desert in which the Children of Israel lost their way.

2 The pl. is used to denote the different places or points where the sun rises. The word also means "Places which receive the rays of the rising sun"; and as such places are good pasture-lands, the word has come to mean "Pastures."

3 This is our excuse for any apparent discrepancy.

4 Lit., on Routes and Kingdoms.

“Miasmatic; exhaling noxious effluvia.” مَدَد, “Hard.”
 خَضْرَاءُ, “Vegetation.” أَجْنَادُ, pl. of جُنْدُ, “Provinces.”¹
 الْاَرْدُنُّ, “The Jordan.” كُرَّةٌ, “District; region.”
 بَيْتُ الْمَقْدِسِ, “The holy city: Jerusalem.” رَيْحَا, or
 أَرَيْحَا, “Jericho.” فِي الْعَمَلِ, “administratively.”
 الْبَحِيرَةُ الْمُنْتَنَّةُ, “The Dead Sea”: مُنْتِنٌ, “Stinking.”
 الْغَوْرُ, *lit.*, “The Valley.” أَعْدَاؤُ, pl. of عَدِيٌّ,
 “watered exclusively by rain.” أَرْخَى بِلْدَانِ الشَّامِ,
 “the cheapest, or most plentiful, district in Syria.”
 الصَّخْرَةُ, “The Rock.”² قَرِيبُ الْقَامَةِ, “about a man’s 138
 height.” مَرَاقٍ, pl. of مِرْقَاةٌ, “stairs; staircase.”
 بَسْطَةُ, “An arm’s length.” مِعْرَابُ دَاوُدَ, “The chamber of
 David.”³ الْمِعْرَاجُ, “Ascension.”⁴ بَيْتُ اللَّهِ الْحَرَامُ, “The
 sacred house of God,” i.e., “The Ka’bah.” وَالْعَهْدُ عَلَيْهِ فِي
 ذَلِكَ, “The responsibility for this statement lies with
 him.”⁵ الْمُهْمَلَةُ, “unpointed.” الدَّجَالُ, “Antichrist.”

¹ The term *jund* primarily designated the military colonies established in Syria, after the conquest, by the first Caliphs.

² The sacred rock at Jerusalem on which the Temple was erected.

³ The primary meaning of *mihṛāb* is “niche.” In the Qur’ān it is used for a chamber. This chamber was said to be David’s tribunal.

⁴ Muḥammad’s supposed journey to heaven.

⁵ i.e., with the author of Al-‘Azizī.

شُرط, "A single run, gallop or heat." مَنَحْرَتُهُ, "Hewn."

أَرْحِيَّةٌ, pl. of رَحَى, "Mills." الْحَمْرُ, "Asphalt; bitumen."

لَطَمَ, يَلْطِخُ, "To besmear; daub." تَيْنٌ, "Fig."

139 أَنَّهُ لِلشَّجَرِ كَالْتَّلْفِيحِ لِلنَّخْلِ, "it is to other trees like impregnation is to the palm."

مَقْلُوبٌ, "overthrown; turned upside down."

لَيْسَ بِهَا زَرْعٌ وَلَا ضَرْعٌ, "possessing neither sown fields nor cattle."

مُنْقَابَةٌ فِي الْكِبَرِ¹, "nearly equal in size."

الْحِجَارَةُ الْمُسَمَّاةُ, "The marked stones."²

الْمَلِكُ الظَّاهِرُ بَيْبُوسُ, "Ash-Shaqif": a fortress. الشَّقِيفُ,

مُصَحَّفٌ, "The Desert."³ الْبَرِّيَّةُ, "The Desert."⁴ الْمَلِكُ الْمُعْظَمُ

وَمِنْ أَعْيُنٍ, "issuing from springs." آهَلَةٌ, "Populous."⁵ عُدْمَانُ

مَرْكَزُ دَعْوَةِ الْإِسْمَاعِيلِيَّةِ, "The centre or headquarters of the Ismā'īlian sect (=the Assassins)."

لَعْفٌ, "Foot (of a mountain)."

140 أَثَارٌ, "Ruins." بَنَعَ, نَبَعَ, "To well; gush out."

شَعْبٌ, "Valley." أَكْثَرُ نَفَقَةٍ, "more costly."

الْمَقْصُورَةُ, "The Sanctuary of a"

¹ Dar' primarily means "udder."

² — which were rained down upon the cities of Lot; each stone was marked, it is said, with the name of the person it should strike.

³ A Mamlūk Sultān of Egypt and Syria; reigned 658—676 A.H. (1260—1277 A.D.).

⁴ Ayyūbid Sultān of Damascus, 615—624 A.H. (1218—1227 A.D.).

⁵ The copy of the Qur'ān which belonged to 'Uthmān, the third caliph, and which he was reading when assassinated.

mosque." الصَّابُون, "The Sabians." يَغْيَى بَنُ
 زَكَرِيَّا, "John the Baptist." رُخَامٌ مُعَجَّرٌ, "mosaic of
 coloured stones or marble." اَسَاطِينُ, pl. of اُسْطَوَانَةٌ,
 "Columns." مُوشَى, "party-coloured." مَعَادِدُ رُؤُسِ
 اَلْاَسَاطِينِ, "Capitals (arch.)" سَطْحٌ, "Roof; ceiling."
 خَرَّاجٌ, "Revenue." زَيْبُوشُ, "Zeus." المُشْتَرِي, "Jupiter."
 وَقْعَةٌ, "Battle." اَلْيَمَانِيَّةُ, "The party of Marwān."¹
 اَلْقَيْسِيَّةُ, "The party of Ibnu'z-Zubayr."¹ عَقْرَدٌ, 141
 نَهْرُ الْعَاصِي, "Arcades." قُنَاةٌ, pl. of قُنْيٌ, "Canals."
 سَطْحُهَا فِي الْمُنْبَسِطِ الْآخِذِ إِلَى حِمَصٍ, "The Orontes."
 "It slopes towards the plain leading to Emesa."
 كِتَابُ الْاَطْوَالِ [وَالْعُرُوضِ] لِلْفُرسِ, "The Persian Book of
 Longitudes [and Latitudes]." دَرَجَةٌ, "Degree."
 دَقِيقَةٌ, "Minute." يَاقُوتٌ, "Yāqūt."² قَرَايَا, pl. 142
 بَحْرُ الزُّفَاقِ. ³ الْعَرَامِمُ, "Villages." قَرْيَةٌ, of
 يَلْتَوِي, "it bends." جُوفُ اَلْأَرْمَنِ, "The Bay or Gulf of
 the Armenians."⁴ الْجَبَلُ, "The Amanus range."

¹ See Muir's *The Caliphate*, p. 329.

² A famous geographer, 575—626 A.H. (1179—1229 A.D.).

³ This word orig. designated the *fortified towns* on the Syrian frontier.

⁴ Orig. "the Straits of Gibraltar"; but the name is here extended to the whole of the Mediterranean.

⁵ Gulf of Alexandretta.

- 143 الدَّرْبُ الدَّرْبُ, "The Pass; Gateway" ¹: بِفَتْحِ الْمَثَلَةِ, "with *fathah* over the three-dotted ث." مَا وَرَاءَ النَّهْرِ, "Beyond the River: Transoxiana." دُونَ, "on this side of." الثُّغُورُ الْجَزِيرَةُ, "The frontier towns of Al-Jazīrah or Mesopotamia." اِخْتَطَّهَا الْخَ, "founded by." قَرْيَةٌ, "The city of the Giants (=the Amalekites)." الْجَبَّارِينَ, "Joshua." تَعَمَّدَ, "was baptised." مَقَالِعُ الْكِبْرِيتِ, "Sulphur mines." الْوَسْمَةُ, "The indigo-plant." النَّيْلُ, "Indigo."

PART I. SECTION V.

SELECTIONS FROM THE JOURNEY OF ŞADIQ PASHA TO THE GREAT SAHARA.

- 144 أَنفًا, "Above; previously." سَلَخَ أَيْلُولَ, "on the last day of September." الثَّكْنَةُ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةُ, "The military station; cantonment; barracks." تَقَرَّرَ, "it was settled." رَسْمٌ, "Photograph." وَمِنْ ثَمَّ, "Hence; for this reason." جُنْدِيٌّ, "A soldier." ضَاقَ صَدْرِي, "I was greatly annoyed." أَثْقَلَ, "Baggage."

¹ The Amanides Pylæ.

شَكَرْتُ لَهُمْ سَعْيَهُمْ, "I thanked them for their trouble."
 تَعَاشَيْتُ مِنْ كَسْرِ قُلُوبِهِمْ, "I was
 loath to wound their feelings." مُهَاجِرُونَ, "Emigrants,
 refugees." بُوْسْنَا, "Bosnia." اُنْفَا, "Disdain."
 يَغْدُرُ غَدَاً, followed by the imperf. indic., "To begin."
 نَخِيطُ خَبَطَ عَشَوَاً¹, "a different road."
 عَمِيَاً², "going at random, without direction." Blind
 she-camel; trackless desert." ثَمَّ, "There; yonder."
 مَرْجَعَةٌ, "A hamlet." مَرْحَلَةٌ, "Stage; halting-place."
 تَشْرِيْنٌ, "duly pitched, satisfactorily" رُكِّزَتْ عَلَى مَا يَرَامُ
 قَضَيْتُ الْغَرِيْضَةَ, "performed my pray- 146
 ers." يَنْتَظِرَانَا, "waiting for us." مُتَصَرِّفٌ, "Gover-
 nor." هَرَعُوا, "rushed." شَرِيْذَةٌ, "A band, troop."
 الْمُتَمَهِّدِيْنَ, "followers of the *Mutamahdī*, or false *Mahdī*."
 كَرُّوا, "they returned; turned back." تَرِيْةٌ, "Shrine;
 tomb." سِكَا, pl. of سِكَةٌ, "Ploughshare." مَحَافِيْرُ
 الدَّهَاقِيْنِ, "spades used by villagers." اَتَانٌ, "A she-ass."

¹ "A road or way different from any other, *lit.*, other than the next."

² — or, without certainty, *lit.*, "like the weak-sighted she-camel that strikes everything with her fore feet as she goes along."

- 147 سَبْعٌ, "Manure." صَاعٌ, "A certain measure for corn (=8 pints)." وَتَوْتِي أَلَهَا¹, "yields or puts forth its fruit or produce."¹ خَرَجَ شَطْرُهَا, "and its stalk comes forth."² أَرْسَانٌ, pl. of رَسَنٌ, "Halter; head stall." دَخَلَ, "Revenue; receipts." سَانِيَةٌ, "Well; especially, well with a water wheel." وَقَابِلِيَّتْهَا, "and its capacity." كَيْرَنَةٌ, "Night camp." كَيْرَنَايَا, "Cyrenaica." كَيْرَنَةٌ, "Cyrene." الْبَطْلَمِيَّيْنِ, "The Ptolemies." إِذْ ذَاكَ, "at that time." أَحْرَاشٌ, "Forests; woods." مَرْبَعَاتٌ, "Places; spots." مُسْتَهْجَنٌ, "Vile; odious." مَجَارٍ, pl. of مَجْرَى, "Channels; aqueducts." بَرِّي, "Wild." أَلْمَانِيَا; "Germany."³ عَلَى أَنْ النِّحْ, "on condition that." شَيْخٌ وَمُرِيدَةٌ⁴. السَّنُوسِيَّةُ, "Head of the monastery."
- 149 "and his disciples." قِطْعَ مِنَ الْقَصْدِيرِ, "Pieces of tin." الْمَجِيدِيُّ, "Medjeedi (silver coin)."⁵ قَطِرَانٌ, "Tar; pitch." نُمُرٌ, "Numbers." خِرَفَانٌ, pl. of خُرُوفٌ, "Lambs." سَانْتِيْغَرَادٌ, "Centigrade." بِيَادِرٌ, pl. of

¹ Cf. Qur'ān, ii. 267.² Cf. Qur'ān, xlviii. 29.³ *Allemagne.*⁴ The Senussiye, disciples of Senussi, a pious Muslim Shaykh of North Africa (1847—1902).⁵ The size of a dollar.

- بَيْدَر , “ Threshing-floor; barn.” ثَمَّة , “ there.” 150
- يَاوَر , “ Aide-de-camp.” بَرِيد , “ Post.” سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ ,
 “ The opening chapter of the Qur’ān.” شَيْع ,
 “ To escort; see off.” مُدِير , “ Governor of a province.”
 يَنْدُ , نَدَّ , السَّوَارِي , “ Cavalry.” الْبِيَادَةُ , “ Infantry.”
 “ To run away; bolt (camel).” جِمَالُ الْإِحْتِيَاظِ , “ spare, 151
 reserve camels.” نَقْلِيَّاتُ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةِ , “ military trans-
 port.” تَوَغَّلَ , “ To
 go far.” وَارْفَضَتْ عَرَقًا , “ and sweated profusely.”¹
 نَعْر , “ Throat; neck.” مَعْطُ الرِّحَالِ , “ Camping 152
 place.” أُونُبَاشِي , “ Corporal.” مَفَازَةٌ , “ A desert.”
 فِلْفُلٌ , pl. of الْفَلَّالُ , “ Usual; ordinary.” مَأْلُوفٌ ,
 “ Pepper; spice.”² طَبَقٌ , الْبَهَارَاتُ , “ spices.”
 التَّوَكَّلُ , “ Tray; dish.” يَسِيعُ , سَاغَ , “ To swallow (easily).”
 “ Trust in God; resignation (to the Divine Will).”
 يَمْضَغُ , مَضَغَ , بِغَايَةِ التَّكْلُفِ , “ with great difficulty.”
 “ of its other”³ مِنْ أَعْضَائِهَا السَّائِرَةِ , “ chew; masticate.”

¹ “ Their sweat ran or flowed.”

² Also applied to the *chilli* or Guinea pepper.

³ Improper use of *sā'ir* as adjective.

- parts." **قَطْعَةٌ** ذَاتُ دُسُومَةٍ, "a rich morsel ;
153 a fat piece." **الْأَسْتَانَةُ** or, more correctly, **الْأَسْتَانَةُ**¹
الْمُكَارِيَةُ, pl. of **مُكَارٍ**, "Muleteers; camel-drivers." **أَكَارِعُ**,
 pl. of **كُرَاعٌ**, "Trotters of sheep, or ox." **الْكِرْشُ**,
 "Stomach; tripe." **بُرْغُلٌ**, "Pearl-wheat." **الْكَسْكَسُونُ**
 (= **الْكُسْكُسُ**), "Semolina." **سَرْبٌ-ظَبَاءٌ**², "a herd of deer."
رَارَغَةٌ, "To dodge; elude." **رَخِيمٌ**, "Soft; gentle."
154 **مِعَى**, "Intestine; gut." **أَمْتَازِبٌ**, "To be distinguished
 by; be remarkable for." **فِي حَالَةِ الظَّعَنِ**, "when tra-
 velling; when on horse or camel back." **يَنْكَبُ, إِنَّكَبَ**,
 "To lay prone." **خَرِيْطَةٌ**, "A map." **عَرَسَ**, "To halt
 (at night)." **السَّائِقُ**, pl. of **سَائِقٌ**, "Drivers." **بَقِيَ, وَقَى**,
 "To protect." **إِنْحِطَاطٌ**, "Lassitude." **لَا يَدْعُ**, "Truly;
 no wonder." **شَمِيمٌ عَرَفَ الْعَرَارِ وَالْبَشَامِ**, "inhaling the
 fragrance of sweet-smelling plants."³ **تَغَذَّى**
 "To be nourished." **أَلْحَانٌ**, pl. of **لَحْنٌ**, "Melo-

¹ Turkish name of Constantinople as *the capital*.

² The large hard grains retained in the bolting-machine after the fine flour has been passed through it.

³ The 'Arār is *buphthalmus sylvestris* or the Wild narcissus; the *Bashām*, a species of balsamiferous shrub.

- dies; airs." **مُؤَثِّرَةٌ**, "Touching; moving." **إِسْبَطَر**,
 "To stretch." **رِاقٌ مِنَ النُّورِ**, "a canopy of light." 155
قَوَامٌ, "Tea." **مَاءٌ فَاتِرٌ**, "Lukewarm water."
 "Strength; degree." **بَيْنَ إِنْجَادٍ وَإِتِهَامٍ**, "now ascending,
 now descending; up hill and down vale." **مِلْحٌ أَجَاجٌ**, 156
 "very salt and bitter." **قَلِيلٌ**, read **قَلِيلٌ**, "To
 acquire." **مَسَامَاتٌ** (= **مَسَامٌ**, pl. of **مَسَمٌ**), "Pores."
مَخْضٌ, "Shaking." **مِنْ مَادَّةِ الْجِلْدِ**, "something of
 the stuff or substance of the leather." **غَدَا سِنًا**, "be-
 came tainted." **فَضْلًا عَنِ**, "much less, not
 to say." **مُصْفَاةٌ**, "Filter." **الْقَاؤُوجُوقُ**, "Caoutchouc;
 India rubber." **تُسْتَحْضَرُ**, "are made." **مُشْرَبٌ**, "im-
 pure; mixed." **شَوَائِبٌ**, pl. of **شَائِبَةٌ**, "Impurities."
لَمْ يُجَدِ, "To stick; be fastened or fixed." **يَعْلَقُ**, **عَلِقَ**
نَفْعًا, "was of no avail." **يَدَّابُ**, **دَابٌّ فِي**, "To pursue
 with energy; to hold on, continue." **طَيُّ الْفَدَافِدِ**,
 "Traversing the deserts." **بَوْنًا بَعِيدًا**, "a great differ-

1 Commonly pronounced *chây*. **شَاي** is another form of the word.

2 These words are etymologically connected with Najd (*the Highlands*) and Tihāmah (*the Lowlands*) of Arabia.

ence.” كَلْسِيَّ , “Calcareous.” كَمَا يَنْبَغِي , “Proper ;

157 as it should be.” الْجَغَرَايَات , “Geographies.” اسْتَغَلَّ ,

“To obtain, gather in (crops).” تَوَتَّفَعَ عَلَى , “To de-

pend on.” مَنُوعٌ , “Variegated.” فِي الْبَكَّارِ , “in the

early morning.” مِعْطَارٌ , “Scented.” الْبَتَاتِسُ , “Pota-

toes.” دُسُومَةٌ , “Richness.”¹ أَبَازِيرٌ , pl. of أَبْزَارٌ ,

“Vegetables, pot herbs or aromatics used in cooking.”

أَتْرَانٌ , pl. عَلَى رَشَكٍ , “on the point of ; about to.”

158 of دَرَنٌ , “Impurity ; any foul matter.” عِبَارَةٌ عَنْ , “to con-

sist of ; to be nothing more than.” جُونِيَّةُ الشَّكْلِ ,

“in the shape of a creek.” تَأَثَّرَ مِنْ , “To be vexed, irri-

tated.” لَنْفَعَ الْغَلَّةَ , “it rushed onward.” فَانْطَلَقَتْ بِي ,

“to quench my [violent] thirst.” اشْتَدَّتْ عَلَيَّ وَطْأَتُهُ ,

“which severely pressed upon me (= violent).” تَلَعَّنَ ,

159 “Hesitation.” يَقْضِي بِالْعَجَبِ , “strikes with wonder.”

رِشَاءٌ , “Rope.” دِلَالٌ , pl. of دَلْوٌ , “Bucket.” مَحْفَظَةٌ ,

“Portmanteau.” مِشْرَبَةٌ , “Drinking-vessel.” ثَوَانٍ ,

pl. of ثَانِيَةٌ , “Seconds.” رُوحُ الذَّنْعِ , “Essence of

¹ Used particularly with reference to flesh-meat.

- peppermint." ^{بَحْدَافِيرَهَا} الدُّنْيَا, "the whole world." ¹
- والْعَامِلُ, "In short." ^{أَنْفِرَاجٌ} , "Spaces; angles": *lit.* 160
- "opening." ^{طِنْفِسَةٌ} , "Carpet." ^{أَرْتَادُ} , "To look for, seek; select." ^{مَغْصٌ} , "Colic; gripes." ^{كَثِيفٌ} ,
- "Thick; dense." ^{ذَرَا} , ^{يَذَرُو} , "To raise the dust, or make it fly (wind)." ^{شُورْبَة} (shorba), "Soup." ^{نَظَّارَةٌ} ,
- "Field-glass; telescope." ^{حَدِيدٌ} , "Sharp; keen." 161
- ^{الضَّبْطِيَّةُ} , "Gendarmerie; police." ^{مِيَمَا} , "going, repairing to; on my way to." ^{القَائِمُ مَقَامٌ} , "Governor of a *qazā'* (canton)." ^{قَوْلٌ أَغَاسِي} , "Wing commander; adjutant-major." ^{حَشَفٌ} , "Bad dates." ^{مَرْكَزٌ} , "Head- 162
- quarters." ^{قَضَاءٌ} , "Canton; district." ^{لِوَاءٌ} , "Arrondissement; subdivision." ^{كُوسَى} , "Pumpkin; quash."
- ^{بَنَادُورَةٌ} , "Tomatoes." ^{خَضَرَاوَاتٌ} , "Vegetables." ^{لَزَجٌ} ,
- "Sticky; viscous." ^{جَوْزَةٌ قَهْوَةٍ} , "Coffee-pot." ^{مَتْرَفَةٌ} , 163
- "Well-to-do." ^{نَوَافِدُ} , pl. of ^{نَافِذَةٌ} , "Windows." ^{أَغْلَاقٌ} ,
- pl. of ^{غَلَقٌ} , "Bolts; wooden locks." ^{قُونْدَرَةٌ} , "Shoes."
- ^{جَرْمُوقٌ} , "Galoche." ^{بُونَيْنٌ} , *Fr.* , "Boots." ^{جَرَمَةٌ} ,

¹ Lit., "the world in all its parts," *ḥadhāfir* (pl. of *ḥidhfār*), meaning, "sides or flanks."

“Wellington boots.” مِهَادٌ, “Bed.” مَلَكَةٌ, “Art; knack.”

164 مُدِيرُ الْمَالِ, “Treasurer.” تَصَوَّرَ, “it occurred to him.”
كَانَ تَصَوَّرَهُ, “which he had in mind.” تَعَرَّى, “To

165 seek out; investigate.” دَرَأُ الشُّبْهَةِ, “To exculpate.”
بِلَا حَاجِزٍ, “without a screen.” مَرَاحٍ, pl. of مِرْوَحَةٌ,

166 “Fans.” اِضْطَجَعَ, “To lay down.” نَامُوسِيَّةٌ, “Mos-
quito-net.” نَامُوسٌ, colloq., “Mosquitoes.” لَا يَأْلَفُ

الظَّلَامَ, “they are not accustomed to, or they do not like,
darkness.” كَانَ مِنَ الْحَرَامِ, “it was out of the question.”

نَقِشٌ, “Ink.” جَيْشٌ جَرَارٌ, “A large army; a host.”

ضَبَطَ الرِّقَاعَ, “To note down, record, events; keep a diary.”

أَشْبَعَ, “was filled with; saturated.” صَدَمَاتٌ, “Attacks.”

يَخْنَةُ, Pers., “Ragout; stew.” طَنَاجِرُ, “Cooking-

167 pots.” تَمُوزُ وَأَبٌ, “July and August.” عَقِيدٌ,

“Emir; counsellor.” زَنْجِيٌّ, “Ethiopean; negro.”

168 رَأْسُ غَنَمٍ, “A sheep.” ذَوَاتٌ, “Personages; gentle-

men.” جُرُوحٌ, “Broadcloth.” بَرَّاقٌ, “Sparkling;

clear.” مَادَّةُ النَّفْطَرُونِ, “Nitrous substances;

saltpetre.” الْمَأْمُورُونَ, “Officials.” يَرْغُو رَغَاً, “To lather

- (soap).” ذَاتُ السَّلَامَةِ , “Safe.” وَالْمُسْكُلُ , “But the difficulty or trouble is that...” عَلَفَ الظُّعُنُ , “Feeding 169 the camels.” عُبَيْدُ اللَّهِ (= عُبَيْدُ اللَّهِ) , “‘Ubaidu’llah.” مُعْتَبَرُونَ , “Men of distinction; gentry.” شَكَلْنَا حَلَقَةً , lit. “formed a ring.” هَيْئَةُ مَحْكَمَةٍ , “A court of law.” تَكْلِيفَاتُ , “Ceremonies.” مَرْعِيَّةٌ , “observed.” الدَّشْرِيفَاتُ , “Requests.” بَطَاقَةٌ , “Note; letter.” مُخْنِقٌ , “Suffocat- 170 ing.” لَاجِلُ النَّفْسِ , “to take the air.” فَيْءٌ , “Shade.” مِظَلَّةٌ , “Umbrella.” مَائِيَّةُ اللَّوْنِ , “Blue.” لَوْحَةٌ , “Pic- ture; tableau.” بَدْرِيًّا , “Early.” بِذَاءٍ عَلَى , “Because of, owing to.” وَعَلَيْهِ , “Therefore.” اِمْتِنَالًا بِي , “to fol- 171 low suit.” الْبَكْسِمَاتُ , “Biscuit.” فِي نَفْسِ الْأَمْرِ , “in the nature of things.” اسْتَحَالٌ , “To be impossible.” تَحِيلَاتُ , “Optical illusions.” اِجْتَلَى , “To look 172 at.” سَرَابٌ , “Mirage.” اِلْتِعَاكُسُ الْهَوَائِيِّ , “Refraction of the air.” وَاقْتُ الزَّوَالَ , “towards sunset, decline of day.” يَعُودُ , عَادَ , “To become.” اِدِيمُ الْغَبَرَاءِ , “The earth’s surface.” بِلُورَاتٍ , “Lenses; glasses.” هَيْجَانٌ , “Inflammation.” قَدْ بَذَتْ عَلَيْهَا , “accu-

- mulated.” **أُمُورُ** **الْإِسْتِشَافِ**, “Elements of surveying.” **دَقَقْتُ** **النَّقْطَةَ**, “I determined the position...”
- 173 **وَبَيْدُهُ**, **الْعَوَارِضُ** **الْأَرْضِيَّةُ**, “The features of the ground.” **وَجَلِبَتْ**, **وَأَحَاتُ**, pl. of **وَأَحَ**, “Oasis.” **وَالْمُنَاسِبَةُ**, “and so.”
- 174 **كُرُومُ** **التَّمْرِ**, “date-palm plantations.” **إِيضَاحَاتُ**, “notes; information.” **تَفْصِيْلَاتُ**, “Particulars.” **حَلَّ** **الْوَقْتُ**, “it was time for.” **مُلَاحَظَاتُ**, **أَغْرَاضُ**, pl. of **غَرَضُ**, “Hints; suggestions.”
- 175 **تَمَرَنَ**, **بِصِفَةِ** **الْخَدَمَةِ**, “Goods; things.” **تَمَرَنَ**, **بِصِفَةِ** **الْخَدَمَةِ**, “as servants.” **تَوَدَّى**, **رَأْسًا**, “To be trained.” **رَأْسًا**, “directly; straight.” **وَزَيْفَةُ** **الدَّلِيلِ**, “perform the functions of, act as, guides.”
- 176 **كَيْفُ**, **الْخِطَّةُ** **الْمِصْرِيَّةُ**, “The country of Egypt.” **دَارُ** **السَّعَادَةِ**¹, **عَلَى** **النَّادِرِ**, “State of health.” **عَلَى** **النَّادِرِ**, “Infrequently.”
- 177 **يَعِزُّ**, **يَعِزُّ**, **عَزَّ**, **يَعِزُّ**, **عَزَّ**, “Humility; supplication, prayer.” **مَحَلِّي**, **حَسَبَ** **الْجِنْسِيَّةِ**, “To be rare.” **مَحَلِّي**, “Local.” **دَنِي**, **نَوْعًا**, “Inferior; worthless.”

¹ In Turkish, *Dāru's-Sa'ādat*, “the House of Felicity,” is applied to the Sultān's *Harem*; while the name of Constantinople is *Dar-i-Sa'ādat*, “the Gate of Felicity.”

- “somewhat.” ظَرْفٌ, “Space of time.” تَأْيِيدٌ, 178
- “Confirmation.” فِرَاسَةٌ, “Intuitive perception; sagacity.” فِقْرَةٌ, “story; anecdote.” إِشَارَةٌ, “Sign; 179
- mark.” دَالِيَةٌ, pl. of دَالِيٌّ, “clearly.” الدَّرَالِي, “Vine; vine-stock.” آلَةٌ جَارِحَةٌ, “Cutting instrument.”
- بِمَجْرَدِ ضَرْبِهِ, “by simply hitting it.” قُطْرٌ, “Diameter.” 180
- إِجْرَاءُ الْعَرَكَاتِ¹, “The Night of Power.” لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ, “going through certain movements.” دَيْنٌ عَلَيْهِ, “a
- debt or duty, which he has to discharge.” تَدَرَّبَ عَلَى, 181
- “devolves upon.” الْمَوَالِيَّاتُ, “Popular songs consisting of stanzas of four lines.” أَسْرَفَ, “To be lavish.”
- فِي رِبْقَةِ الْهَلَاكِ, pl. of صِهْرِيحٌ, “Cisterns.” صَهَارِيحٌ, 182
- “in the trap, *lit.* noose, of death.” مُتَوَاتِرٌ, “Un-
- interrupted.” أَشْلَاءُ, pl. of شَلْوٌ, “Limb; body; remains.”
- رَهِيْبٌ, “Dreadful; terrible.” مَجَالٌ, “Time; leisure; opportunity.” أَخْطَرْتَهُمْ, “gave them notice.” لَأَقْرَارَ لَهَا, 183
- “incessant.” وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ, “nevertheless.” الْهَضْبَاتِ السَّيَّارَاتِ, “moving hills.” مُعْجَرٌ, “formed by.”

¹ The 27th of Ramadhān : alluded to in Qur'ān, xcvii.

adj., "Stony, petrified"; مَحَجَّرٌ, n., "Quarry; rocky place." غُرُ الْأَفَاعِي, "The Snake Valley." أَحْجَارُ الْقَدَاحَةِ, "Flints." كُرِّيَّةٌ, "Spherical." بَوَارِيدُ, pl. of بَارُودٌ, "Muskets; rifles." تَوَفَّقَ لِ, "To be fortunate or lucky to get, or find, something." غَنِيْمَةٌ, "A prize." ¹ مِنْ الْمَعْلُومِ الْبَدِيهِيِّ, "Obviously."

184 إِحْنِيَّاتٌ, "Precautions." تَنْبُوْتُوُ, "Timbuctoo." ثَخِيْنٌ, "Thick." مُجَوَّفٌ, "Hollow." صَفَوَةٌ, *colloq.*, "Ashes." لَمَعَانٌ مَا, "any glittering." وَضَّاحٌ, "Bright; luminous." وَبِنِسْبَةِ الْخِ, *colloq.*, "Piaster." قِرْشٌ, "in proportion to." مَمْلَكَاتٌ, "Salt-mines." بِصُورَةٍ فَائِقَةٍ, "in an exceptional manner."

185 مُحِيطٌ, "Circumference." هَدَفٌ, "Land-
Skill; practical ability." مُمَارَسَةٌ, "Land-

186 mark; conspicuous object." مَهْمُوزٌ, Turkish form of Ar. مِهْمَازٌ, "Spur." تَشْوِيقَاتِي, "my stimulating shouts." الْمُتَشَعِّبُ الْأَشْعَةِ, "radiant; radiating." تَرَكِ الْمَعْجُوبِيَّةَ فِي حَوْمَلَتِي, "to swallow my shame." كُنْتُ جِزْمْتُ, "I had come to the
its size." تَجَسُّمًا, "its size."

¹ Lit. "A thing acquired without trouble; a booty that comes easily."

conclusion." *بُشِرَ*, "was begun with." *مِنْ مُلَحَقَاتِ الْعَمَلِ*, 187

"a dependency of." *بَيْنُوتَةٍ*, "Passing the night."

مَقَرٍّ, "Residence." *يُصَوِّبُونَ أَفْكَارِي*, "to approve my

idea." *إِبْرَامُ*, "Determining; deciding." *دَبْرِينَ*, *زَبْنِ*, 188

"To shave; trim one's hair." *سُتْرَةٌ ذَاتُ الْفُرُومَا* "Uniform coat."

PART II.

EXTRACTS FROM *Kitābu 'l-Wāsitah*, A DESCRIPTION OF
MALTA, AND *Kashfu 'l-Mukhabbā*, AN ACCOUNT
OF EUROPEAN CULTURE, BY AHMED FARIS
EFFENDI, PROPRIETOR AND EDITOR OF
Al-Jawā'ib.¹

تَلَأَلُ مِنْ نَازِلِهَا, "that preys on those resident in it, i.e., 189

unhealthy." *مَعْرُ*, "as it actually is." *مِنْ حَيْثُ هُوَ*,

"Clear sky." *أَعْزَانُ السَّمَاءِ*, "The expanse of heaven."

إِكْفَهَر, "To darken." *زَمَرُ*, *يَزْمِرُ*, "To pipe; whistle."

لَطِخَةٌ سَحَابٍ, "a speck of cloud." *غَادِيَةٌ*, "Morning cloud."

خِلَالٍ, "Interval." *نَفْخَةٌ مِنَ الرِّيحِ*, "a gust of wind."

النَّعُورِ, "Wind bringing a cooling blast in sultry weather;

¹ This renowned weekly, now defunct, was published in Constantinople.

- and a warm breeze in cold weather." السَّافِيَاءُ, "Dust-cloud." مِنْ خِصَاصِ الزُّجَاجِ, "through the chinks of the windows." زَمَهْرِيرٌ, "icy cold." صَوَّرَ, "To creak."
- 190 يَقْرِمُ, قَرِمَ, رَافِدَةٌ, pl. of رَوَافِدُ, "Beams; rafters." "To parch; scorch; shrivel up." الرَّمْدُ, "Sultry weather." أَحْذَرُ مِنْ غُرَابٍ, "More cautious than the raven": a proverb. الْأَجَمُ وَالْغِيَاضُ, "Thickets and copses." مَسْكَنَهَا مَسْعَاً, "it envelops its whole surface with sunshine." مَلْطَى, "Shelter; covert." عَارِمٌ, "Severe." مَقْمَأَةٌ, "Sheltered spot." لَوْلَا, "it would vegetate." مَقْطَعٌ, "Quarry." يَطِلُّ, أَطَلَّ, "To look down; peep." يَشِيعُ, شِيعَ, "To see off a friend." يَنْتَظِمُ بِهِ شَمْلٌ, refers to picnics and pleasure parties. الْأَهْبَابُ النِّجْمُ, "seize the wayfarer by the forelock."
- 191 الشَّجَرِ الْمَعْدُونَاتِ, "the few trees." جَاهِدٌ, "Hard; trying." النَّشُوقُ, "Tobacco." الْعَقَاقِيرُ, "Drugs." مَبْلَطٌ, "Pavement." مَخْدَعٌ, "Closet; cupboard." تَسْرِي إِلَيَّ, "will affect; find its way

- to." مَمْنُونٌ (دَاءُ الْمَفَاصِلِ =) الْبَدَلُ, "Rheumatism."
 تَأَسَّيْتُ بِهِمْ, "are afflicted with it; suffer from it."
 "I had consolation; was resigned to my fate."
 عَطَسٌ, "Mouldiness." غَائِلَةٌ, "Evil; attack."
 192 الْمَسَامُ, فَلَانُهُ, "Flannel." غَلَاظُ, pl. of غَلَاةٌ, "Shirts."
 مَلَطَةٌ, "Pores." وَقَسَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ, "and so on."
 كَدَحَ, "Earth." التَّرَى, "Bald." جَرْدَاءُ, "Smooth."
 يَكْدَحُ, "To toil; labour." غَلَّةٌ, "Produce."
 الْقَطَانِيُّ, "Grain; pulse; cereals." الضَّأْنُ, "Sheep."
 الْخَرْنُوبُ, "The carob." وَهْلَمَ جَرَا, "and so on."
 أَزْرَارُ, "Buttons." الصَّبَارُ, "Prickly pear; cactus."
 مَنَعًا لِصَابَةِ الْعَيْنِ, "To attach to." يَنْوُطُ, نَاطِبُ
 تَبَوُّعُهُ الْعَيْنُ, "to avert the evil eye."
 فَمَا أَقَلَّ ظِلُّهُمْ, "the eye recoils from it." "what
 little shade they have!" يَضَعِي, ضَحِيَّ, "To go to
 the open country." رَيْعٌ, "Field." حَقْلٌ, "Bright-
 ness." أَكَادِيْسُ, "Heaps." نَاطُورٌ, "Watchman."
 الْخِيَارُ, "Cucumber." الْيَمُونُ الْحَلْوُ, "Sweet lime."
 نُؤَى, "Stones (of fruit)." فَجٌّ, "Unripe (fruit)."

- 193 ^{بُرْدَقَان} , "Orange." ^{كَالْطَرَفَةِ} , "as a present, or something rare." ^{سِدَادٌ مِنْ عَوَزٍ} ¹ "Stop-gap." ^{الْعَلِيقُ} , "The Blackberry." ^{عَيْنُ الْبَقَرِ} , "Apricot." ^{الْمِشْمِشُ} , "Buphtalmum, 'oxeye." ^{الزَّعْرُورُ} , "Medlar." ^{شَدِيدُ الْفَجِيَةِ} , "hard to get ripe." ^{عُدُقٌ} , pl. of ^{أَعْدَاقٌ} , "Bunches; branches." ^{مَسِيحٌ} , "Insipid." ^{الْحَرَافَةُ} , "Pungency, pungent flavour." ^{الْكُرْنُبُ} , "Cauliflower." ^{الْبَازَنْجَانُ} , "Egg-plant, aubergine." ^{يَجْسُرُ} , جَسَا , "To be hard, tough." ^{الْكُوسَى} , "Pumpkin." ^{الْقَنَاءُ} , "Cucumber." ² ^{نُفَايَةٌ} , ^{الْقِشْطَةُ} , colloq., "Cream." ^{الْمَلُوحِيَّةُ} , "Mallow." ^{قَقْرَزٌ} , ^{طَرَابُلُسُ الْغَرْبِ} , "Tripoli (North Africa)." ^{إِدَامٌ} , "Food, as To loath; feel an aversion to." ^{نَقَبْتُ الدَّمَ} , "Spitting of blood." ^{وَنِمَاءَ جِسْمٍ} , "sturdiness, or thriving of the body." ^{يَمْشِي الْخِيَلَاءُ} , ^{أَرَسَطُو} , "Aristotle." ^{تَرَشُّفًا} , "by sips." ^{وَهُوَ يَصْفِرُ وَيَمْكُو} , "whistling." ^{رَصَفٌ} , "Quay," ^{وَعَلَى تَقْدِيرٍ} , "and supposing."
- 194

¹ A supplementary supply; serving to supply what is wanted.

² *Cucumis sativus*.

- وَلَا لِلتَّلَوِّجِ, "nor for ices." الْمَنَكَاتُ, "Couches."
 قَلِيلُ الْجَدَرَى, "Valetta." نَالَتَهُ, "The Bosquet." الْبُوسَكَةُ,
 "of small utility; of little advantage." شُعْبٌ, pl.,
 "Shaggy, bushy." قَبْوَةٌ, "Vault." عَيْنُ نَضَاحَةٍ, "Gush-
 ing spring." طُحْلُبٌ, "Watermoss." نَوَاعِيرُ, Water-
 wheels." مَجَازٌ, "Passage; station." مَوَاسِمُ, "Fairs." 195
 صَمَاءٌ, "Hard." وَطِيقَانُهَا مَرْجَجَةٌ, "and all its windows
 are glazed."¹ عَرَضَتْهَا مِنْ بَعْدٍ, "see it from a distance."
 كَالِهَامَةِ الْقَرَعَاءِ, "like a bald pate." غُرَفٌ, "Upper
 chambers." مَسَاكِنُ, "Rooms." عِلِيَّةٌ, "Upper
 chamber." مَنَجُورَهَا, "Windows, doors, etc., made
 of wood." لَا تَفِي بِالْمَرَادِ, "are insufficient." مَطَالٌ,
 "Windows that overlook the street or other houses."
 رَوَاشِنُ, pl. of رَوْشَنٌ, "Projecting windows; balconies."
 كُشْكٌ, "Kiosk." يَكْشِطُ, كَشَطٌ, "To scrub." 196
 الْكَهْرَبَاءُ, "Amber." عَلَى حِدَّتِهِ, "separately." فَوَارَاتُ,
 "Fountains." الْمَمَارَاتُ, "Pantries." مَوْنَةٌ, "Pro-
 visions." شُغْلُ شَاغِلٌ, "family-man." صَاحِبُ الْعَيْلَةِ,

¹ Or "arched."

“ Great trouble. ” *فِي الْأَصْلِ*, “ Originally. ” *عَدِمَ الْاِتِّقَالَ*

الْاَسْعَارِ, “ Fixity, unchangeableness of prices. ”

مَظْنَةً لِلْمَجِيَّةِ, “ to give him notice. ” ¹ *أَنْ يَضْرِبَ لَهُ أَجَلًا*,

“ gives an idea of barbarity. ” ² *عَزَبَ*, “ Bachelor. ”

197 *ضَامِنٌ*, “ Security ; “ To be at liberty. ” *لَا حَرَجَ عَلَيْهِ*

bail. ” *يَنْفَدُ*, “ To be exhausted ; come to an end. ”

مِنْ الْعَيْنِ, “ Superintendent of Canals. ” *نَاطِرُ الْأَنْيَةِ*

كَثِيرًا مَا, “ from the public spring. ” *الْمُشَاعَةِ*,

“ often. ” *خُرُوقٌ*, “ Openings. ” *قَوَارِيرُ الزُّهُورِ*, “ Flower-

pots. ” *يَتَبَوَّأُ*, “ To occupy (a house). ” *مَدَلَاةٌ*

أَجْرَاسٌ, pl. “ attached to wires. ” ³ *بِأَسْلَاقٍ حَدِيدٍ*

of *جَرَسٍ*, “ Bells. ” *شَرَائِطُ*, pl. of *شَرِيطَةٌ*, “ Ropes,

cords. ” *الْمَخْدُومُ*, “ The master. ” *جَدَدٌ*, “ To pull. ”

حَيَزُومُ السَّفِينَةِ, “ To ring (a bell). ” *أَطَنَّ*,

“ that lighten one's labour. ” *يَهِنُ مِنْ صَعْبِهَا*

حَافَاتُ, pl. of *حَافَةٌ*, “ Edge. ”

عَجَلَاتُ, “ Carts ; carriages. ” *قَرْقَعَةٌ*, *colloq.*, “ creak-

¹ “ to specify a period, or fix a time. ”

² “ is such as to make one believe the people to be uncivilized. ”

³ Lit. “ let down by means of, hanging from, wires. ”

- ing; jolting." لَا تُطَاقُ, "Unbearable." يَكْرُبُ, حَرْبَ, "To plunder; pillage." وَ الْحَقُّ يُقَالُ, "Truth to say."
- مَتَارًا لِلذَّقْعِ, "a place full of dust."¹ مَتَاقِعَ لِلْوَحْلِ, "mud-holes; full of mud." عَوَاجِلُ, "Carriages."
- دُونَ, "favour the upper classes."² يَرَاعُونَ خَاطِرَ الْعَلِيَّةِ, "and not the people." مُسَدِّرٌ, "over-198
powering to the eyes; dazzling." قَبَاقِبُ, "Clogs, wooden shoes." شَتَعَ عَلَى, "To reproach; taunt; speak disparagingly of." مُسْتَوْفِرًا, "in a hurry; in haste."
- يَحْمِلُ ذَلِكَ عَلَى مَنَازِبِ الْبِلَادِ, "Public inns." الْغَنَاتُ, "condemns the country for it." جِزَافًا, "wrongly; unfairly." يَغِضُّ, غَضَّ النَّظَرَ, "To ignore; shut the eyes to." يَزَاطُ, زَاطَ, "Immorality; fornication." عِهْرٌ, "To bawl; vociferate." دَازِعٌ, "One that restrains, checks."
- مَنْظُورٌ, "of importance; worthy of notice." مَغِطْسٌ, 199
"Bathing place."³ تَكْيِيسٌ, "Rubbing with a *kīs*,⁴

¹ *Mathār li'n-naq'*, a place where dust rises in dense masses; enveloped with clouds of dust."

² *Rā'ā*, "To favour, have consideration for, be partial towards."

³ *Maḡḡḡis*, "a place where persons may immerse their bodies in water; bathing pond."

⁴ *Kīs*, "rough hair glove for rubbing bathers in Turkish baths."

shampooing." ^{مَتَكَلِّزُونَ} , "shampooing." ^{تَكْبِيسٌ} ,

"Anglicized." ^{يَقْلِدُونَ مَوَالِيَهُمْ} ¹ , "imitate their masters."

رفاء , "Darner." ^{الشَّالُ الْكَشْمِيرِيُّ} , "Cashmere (stuff)."

أَعْظُمُ النَّاسِ , "do not care ; take no interest in." ^{لَا نَعْنَى} ,

أَقْتَصَادًا وَتَوَفِيرًا , "the most economical and thrifty people."

الأوباشُ , "The rabble ; riff-raffs." ^{مِنْ دُبُرٍ} , "at the back."

200 "لَقَدْ أَبْرَمْتَ بِي فَمَتَى تُفَارِقُ" ² , "indirectly." ^{بِلِسَانِ الْحَالِ} ,

"Thou borest me ! When wilt thou depart ?"

حَرٌّ , "Pavilion ; alcove." ^{عَرْشٌ} , "Covert." ^{كِنٌّ} ,

أَمَلًا , "Resorts." ^{الْمَتَابَاتُ} , "his open face." ^{وَجْهَهُ} ,

"Entirely." ^{هَزِيْعًا} , "Part, portion (of the

night)." ^{قَنْجٌ} , pl. of ^{قَنْجَةٌ} , " Nile boat, river boat."

يَمِيدٌ , مَادٌ , " Cushions ; carpets." ^{زُرْبِيَّةٌ} , pl. of ^{زُرَابِيٌّ} ,

"To roll, toss, pitch." ^{مِنْ أَدْنَى شَيْءٍ} , "from the

least thing." ^{وَلَقَائِلُ أَنْ يَقُولَ} , "Indeed ; one may say."

يَعْرِفُ , عَرَفَ , "Beauty ; elegance." ^{الطَّلَاةُ} ,

متكيسٌ , متشبعٌ , "Ostentatious ; pretentious." (band).

¹ Those who have adopted English manners and customs.

² " By a hint ; by his very actions."

- "Gay ; smart ; gallant." بَرْنُو، رَنَا ، " To gaze in admiration." المَتلَهونَ ، اُدَّتْ عَلَى ، " To act coquettishly." اَلْعَبُّ الْفَارِ ، " The pleasure-loving." المَوسِيقَى ، " Music." خَطَرٌ ، " Fireworks." حَلَبَةُ السِّبَاقِ ، " Racing." كَصَارِي الْمَرْكَبِ ، " Stake." زُحْلُوقةٌ ، " Slide." 201
 " like the mast of a ship." المَرْعُ ، colloq., " Carnival." تَزَيَّى ، " To dress , attire oneself." مَسْكُورَةٌ ، " appearing in fancy dresses." مَسْكُورَةٌ ، " Masquerade." وَكَانَهُ مَعْرِفَ الْخِ ، " which seems to be a corruption of." المُنْكَرَاتُ ، " Revel ; carousal." تَذَاكُرُ ، " Unseemly actions." الْاِنَابَةُ ، " Repentance." جَشَعَ ، " Cards." يَلْبِي ، لَبَّى ، " To comply ; accept." خُبْنَةٌ ، " Greedy." اُجِيبُ مُغَالِطًا ، " Food carried under the armpit, or in the sleeve." اَلْمَلهى ، " I answered equivocally." جَلٌّ ، " Theatre ; place of amusement." 202
 " of the first quality." مِنَ الطَّرَازِ الْأَوَّلِ ، " The majority of players." اَللَّاعِبِينَ ، " To fix upon ; adopt." فَتَحْتُ ، " I have taken the great city of the West (Alexandria) وَمَا أَدْرَاكَ مَا بَارِيسُ (= " Paris, the magni-

ficent." مُشْعُوذٌ, "Conjurer." التَّمْيِيلُ وَالتَّخْيِيلُ, "artful deception; legerdemain." مَنَشُورٌ, "Bull (papal)." الْبَابَا, "The Pope." مِنْ جُمْلَةِ شَعُودَاتِهِ, "one of his artful tricks or sleights." الدُّمَى, pl. of دُمِيَّةٌ, "Images; statues." الْإِرْجَوَانُ, "Purple." الْإِسْتَبْرَقُ, "Brocade; embroidered satin." صَفْحَةُ سَاعَةٍ, "Dial; face of a timepiece (=clock)." الْأَحْوَالُ, "Chasuble." بَدَلَةٌ, "Poor; indigent." مَعَالِيكَ, "Baptism." الْمَعْمُودِيَّةُ, "Domestic occurrences." الطَّارِئَةُ,

- 203 مِفَةٌ, "in such a miserable country as." عَلَى نَحْسِهَا, "University." مَدْرَسَةُ جَامِعَةٍ, "inherent quality." قَائِمَةٌ, "without stoppage of pay."¹ مَشَايِعُ, "The Professor of Rhetoric." صَاحِبُ الْمَعَانِي وَالْبَيَانِ, "Roman." دَارُ كُتُبٍ مَوْقُوفَةٍ, "Public Library." أَنْ يَطَالَعَ كِتَابًا, "Volume." تَحْتَهُ, "To study; master." اسْتَوْعَبَ, "Truly." لَا جَرَمَ, "Defect." خَرَمَ, "important." طَائِلٌ,
- 204 عَتِيدَةٌ, "Wealth; easy circumstances." سَعَةٌ ذَاتُ الْيَدِ, "Ready; handy." بِأَهْوَنِ سَعِيٍّ, "with the least trouble."

¹ Cf. Qur., xli. 7, etc.

- مَجَانًّا, "Public, lit. endowed, schools." الْمَدَارِسُ الْوَقْفِيَّةُ
 "gratuitously." زَهِيدٌ, "Small, paltry." صَبٌّ, "Toil."
 حَرَمَانٌ, "Want of means." مَطَابِعُ, "Printing houses."
 لِلْمِيرِي, "belongs to the government." لِلْأَهْلِينَ, "to the
 people." وَدَارَانِ لِلصَّرَفِ, "Newspapers." مَصْحُفُ الْأَخْبَارِ,
 "and two banks." النَّظَرِيزُ, "Embroidering." النُّغُولُ,
 "Bastards." التَّبْنِي, "Adoption." مَسْتَشْفِيَاتُ, pl. of
 سِتَشْفَى, "Hospitals." يَهْدِي, هَدَى, "To rave;
 talk nonsense." دَرَزُ, "Comforts, conveniences of life."
 عَلَى شَفَا جُرْفٍ هَارٍ, "on the brink of a tottering water-
 worn bank." الدُّنْيَا الْغُرُورُ,¹ "The delusive world." 205
 كَالْأَغْرَارِ, "like simple children": pl. of غَرٌّ.
 اِنْخَنَتَ مِنْهُمْ الْقُدُودُ, "stood before
 their figures bent." اِسْتَوَى سِنْدَهُمْ, "were fettered;
 shackled." اَلْأَهْمَى, "Minds; intel-
 lects." ظِمُّ الْحَيَاةِ, "Life; the period from birth to death."²
 مَصَارِيْنُ, "Veal." الْعَجَلُ, "past memories." كَانَ وَمَارَ

¹ Or "a crumbling wall of sand." Qur., ix. 110.

² *Zim*, "The space of time between one drinking and another."

- "Intestines." فُلْس, "Farthing." حَمِيرٌ فَارِهَةٌ,
 "Good donkeys." مَصَانِعُ, "Manufactories." السَّكَافَةُ,
 "Shoemaking." النِّسَاجَةُ, "Weaving." الخِرَائِنُ,
 "Cabinets." الأُمُونَةُ, pl. of مَوَانُ, "Chests; presses."
 سُرُورُ النَّوْمِ, "Shipbuilding." انْشَاءُ الْمَرَاكِبِ,
 206 "Bedsteads." الشُّفُوفُ, "Ear-rings." الابَازِيمُ,
 "Clasps; buckles." الأَبْرُ, "Pins." الْمَلَاعِقُ, "Spoons."
 الْأَطْبَاقُ, "Coffee-pots." أَبَارِيقُ الْقَهْوَةِ, "Ladles." الْمَغَارِفُ,
 "Trays." الْمَسَارِجُ, "Lamps." أَوْعِيَةُ السُّكَّرِ, "Sugar
 bowls." شُقُقُ الْفُرَطِ, "Pieces of towelling." قِيمُ الصَّنْعَةِ,
 "Master of the guild." تَذَكُّرَةٌ, "Certificate; memoran-
 dum." جُعْلٌ, "Fee." التَّنْمِيْنُ, "appraised price."
 شَعَاذٌ, "Beggar." أَلْحَفَ بِالسُّوَالِ, "To dun; be im-
 portunate in begging." وَلَا يَبْرَحُونَ مُسْتَجِدِّينَ, "and they
 go an asking." وَهُمْ يَرَوْنَ أَنَّ حَقًّا الْخَ — "they seriously
 think that the rich are bound, etc." أَنْ يُؤَاوِسُوهُمْ, "to
 help, assist them." يَدُونُ, يَدِّنُ, "To write down; re-
 cord." دُسْتُوْرٌ, "A register." نَغْرُ الْفَمِ, "opening the
 mouth." مَطُّ الصَّوْتِ, "Swelling the voice; vociferating."

- لَمَّا يَسْتَعَاذُ, "disagreeableness of sound." نَطَاعَةُ اللَّحَنِ, "is something horrible." مِنْهُ, "Lower classes; servants." سَلَفُوهُ بِالْسِّنَنِ, "they scoff or rail at him." يَلْمِزُ, لَمَزَ, "To slander; defame." مَنَابَةُ, "Haunt; resort." النَّحَاقُ, "Litigation; contesting in law." الْخَيْرُونَ, "Good, respectable people." لَغَطٌ, "Noise, turmoil; shouts." حَانَةٌ, "Tavern; 207 grog-shop." تَقَاىَ, "To vomit." الْهَوَامُّ, "Reptiles; insects." ثَقَبَةٌ, "A trustworthy person." مَلَطِيَّةٌ, "Militene." الْعَنَابُ, pl. of عَنَكَبُوتٌ, "Spiders." الْعَنَكَبُوتُ, "Cobweb." وَشَاحٌ, "Sash, scarf." بَرْنِيَّةٌ, "Hat." تَوَهَّمَ أَنَّ الْعِ, يُحَاكِي, حَاكَى, "To imitate." "imagining that." أَوْلَى بِالْقُنُوتِ, "more appropriate for worship." تَقَرَّطَ, "To wear ear-rings." بَرُخُونٌ, "they let down ringlets, or curled locks." سَوَالِفٌ مُجَمَّدَةٌ, "A cap 208 of fine cloth; fez." طَلِيَّةٌ, "Necks." طَرَائِدُشُ, pl. of طَرَبُوشٌ, "Bags." مُسَدَّلَةٌ, "let down; hanging down." صَدْرِيَّةٌ, pl. of جَرَابٌ, "Bags." أَجْرِيَّةٌ,

- “Waistcoat.” الْبَطْرَحُ, “A gay and conceited fellow.” مُتَبَرِّجَةٌ, “Fine, gay, showy in dress (woman).” كُفُوفٌ, “Gloves.” تَبَهَّرَجَتْ, “adorned herself; put on her finery.” التَّفَخُّلُ, “Putting on one’s best clothes.” حَدِيثُ النِّعْمَةِ, “An upstart; parvenu.” شَوَهَةٌ, “Deformity.” رَسَمَتْ شَكْلَ الصَّلِيبِ, “she makes the sign of the cross.” جَنِينٌ, “Fœtus; child in the womb.” التَّوَحُّمُ, “The longing of a woman with child.” أَجْزَأُ, “To serve as a substitute.” الْجَزَعُ, “Onyx.” بِحَسَبِ الزِّيِّ, “according to the fashion.” المَرْقُشُ, “Embroidered, brocaded stuffs.” المَرْقُشُ, “Flowered silks, etc.” مَرْنَقَةٌ, “Close-bodied; close-fitting.” جَبَّةٌ, “A long coat; coat.” سِرْوَالٌ, “Trowsers; breeches.” مَلَاءَةٌ, “A sheet.” أَزْيَاقُ, pl. of زَيْقُ, “Collar (of shirt, etc.).” قَدَالٌ, “The back part of the head.” هَبْرِيَّةٌ, “Scurf.” شَدَّانَ مَا بَيْنَهُمَا, “There is a great difference between the two.” النَّشَا, “Starch.” الصَّحْنَاةُ, “Fish” صُلْدِي, “A soldo.”¹ السَّلَاطَةُ, “Salad.”

¹ $\frac{1}{30}$ of the Italian lira or franc.

- jelly." **وَلَمْ تُرْفِهْ ثَمَنَهُ**, "and do not give him the proper price." **جَاعِضٌ**, "Massive; big; humped." **يُعَدُّ لَوْمًا**, 211
 "is considered meanness." **لُبٌّ**, "Crumb; the soft part of bread." **غَيْرُ مَرِيٍّ**, "unwholesome." **يَسْتَبِقُونَ السَّاحِفُ**, lit. "they run with haste." **إِلَى**, **الْبَحْرِيَّةُ**, "Sea-turtles." **وَكَيْفَ كَانَ**, "but, after all." **الْمَخْنُوقُ**, **يَبِيضُ**, **يَبِيضُ**, "To enamel cooking utensils." **نِيءٌ**, "strangled (animals)." **نِيءٌ**, "Raw; uncooked." **حَبْلُ اللَّيْفِ**, 212
 "Soft (bed)." **نَضَدَ**, "To pile up." **نَفَشَ**, **نَفَشَ**, "Coir." **يَنْفُشُ نَفَشَ**, "To tease; card." **كَبَا عَلَى وَجْهِهِمْ**, "flat on their faces." **فِي الْحَدِيثِ**, "in the Traditions (of the Prophet)." **الْإِسْتِرَافَةُ**, "Comfort; ease." **الْإِسْتِرَافَةُ عَلَى الْأَرَائِكِ**, "Sitting on couches, or sofas." **وَنَاهَيْكَ بِمَنْ أَخْ**, **حَشِيَّةٌ**, "Quilt." **نَمْرَقَةٌ**, "Cushion." **يَمُهِرُ**, **يَمُهِرُ**, "To dower." **يُؤْتِثُّ**, **أَثَثَ**, "To furnish a house." **حَمٌّ**, "Father-in-law." **غَيْرُ مُحْكَمٍ**, "inexperienced." **مَادَّةٌ**, "Means; substance; income." **قَوَامُونَ عَلَى الذَّسَاءِ**, "the supporters of women." **التَّهَافُتُ**, "Rushing, plunging into; 213

being keen, eager, prompt." أَنَّهُ نِسَائِهِمْ, "The curse of their women." حُسْنُ الْخَلْقِ, "good looks." وَتَسْفِهَهُ, "and charges him with folly; calls him a fool." الْأَخْطَابُ, pl. of خِطْبُ "Betrothed; fiancé." مِنْ حَجَرٍ وَالْدَيْهَا, "from the bosom of her family." طَاعِمًا كَاسِيًا, "in the lap of luxury." مُتَحَادِيَيْنِ, "side by side." الْمَأْتَمُ, pl. of مَأْتَمٌ, "Assemblies of mourning."¹ وَلَمْ يَرْجِعِ الْمَوْتَى, "The moaning of mourning women will

214 not bring back the dead." الْحَدَادُ, "Mourning." وَضِيْمَةٌ, "A funeral-banquet." السُّمْرَةُ, "Brown complexion." الرَّبْعِيَّةُ فِي الْقَوَامِ, "Being of a middle stature." عَوَاضُ, "Side whiskers." عَنَاقِقُ, pl. of عَنَقَقَةٌ, "Imperial." ضَمْنُكَ الْعَيْشِ, "Gentleness." لَيْنُ الْجَانِبِ, "A life of hardship." تَجَشَّمُ, "To attempt." يَكِلُ وَكَلَّ, "To entrust; leave to." جَمَلَةٌ

215 (with إِلَى of the pers.), "To entrust; leave to." الْفُضُولُ, "Officiousness." الْإِسْعَافُ, "Busying one's self with trifles."

¹ Ma'tam, "An assembly of female mourners, beating their breasts, tearing their hair, face, or garments, and making a melancholy noise, on account of any misfortune, as the death of a friend."

زَمْرٌ, "Groups of men." لِّلشَّيْءِ يَحْدُثُ, "anything happening; an event." حَتَّى يَجِدَ غَيْرَهُ, "till something new takes place." طَعَامٌ, "People of low condition, the baser sort." بَنَوْهَا, "they spread it." بَدَأَ, يَلْكَزُ, لَكَزَ, "To surprise." (with acc. of the pers.), بَدَأَ, "To punch; thump." فَإِنَّ حَصْرَ الْفِطْرِ الْعَمَّ, "Narrow-216
 ness, or want of enlarged views, is the result of living within confined limits." التَّشْفُّفُ, "Want of reserve; speaking of one's private affairs to others." لَّا مَمْنَعَانَ, مُتَبَدِّخًا, "to drudgery and slavery." وَالْأَبْنَاءُ, "playing the great man." مَنِ ارْزَاهُ الْفِعْمَةُ, "one swelled with the pride of wealth." ذَلِيقٌ, "Glib (tongue)." أَكْسَى لَهُمْ مِنَ اللَّبَاسِ, صِهْيَوْنَ, "Zion." مُسَكَّةٌ مِنَ الْعَيْشِ, "they are very generally assumed."¹
 "A morsel; a mouthful; food (as keeping together the body)." الذَّعْفُ, التَّعْقِبُ لِلرَّلَاةِ, "Fault-finding."² الاغْتِيَابُ, "Animadversion." Traducing, inveighing

¹ Lit. "cover them more fully than a garment covers the wearer."

² "Railing against, or inquiring into, a man's vices; seeking to discover his slips or faults."

- against (the absent).” لَهَجَةٌ, “Language; tone.”
 سَعْنَةٌ, “Complexion.” مَبْرُورِينَ, “Railing against.”
 217 أَنشَأُوا جُمْلَةً مَصَالِحَ وَمَعَالِمَ, “founded a number of public establishments and institutions.” كَانُوا يَذَّالُونَ مِنْ عَرَضِهِمْ, “used to violate the chastity of their women.” مَزَنَ بِأَنَّهُمْ الضَّعْفُ, “who were suspected to be.” وَرَى . عَلَى, colloq. for عَلَّ, “To hint; insinuate.” يُوْرِي, “To gain a friend from among them.” بَيْنَ ظَهْرَانِيهِمْ, “in their midst.” لَتَأْبَلُّوْا عَلَيْهِ مِنْ كُلِّ أَرْبٍ, “they would close upon him from every quarter.”
 إِنْتَهَزَ الْفُرْعَةَ, “To avail one's self of an opportunity.”
 الْإِخْتِلَاقُ, “Inventing a lie.” الْوَرِكُ, “Hip-bone; haunch.”
 218 سَوِيٌّ, “Straight-forward.” السَّبَابَةُ, “The forefinger.” أَمَرُوا الْأَنَامِلَ, “they pass their fingers.” السِّتُّ, “the lady.” (الْمَرْأَةُ =) الْمَرْءَةُ, “A woman in childbed.” حَالٌ وَضَعَهَا, “as soon as she is delivered.” الطَّلُقُ, “The labour of childbirth.” أَمَامَ, “To ring; tinkle (a bell).” يَنْقُسُ, نَقَسَ

- القُرْبَانِ, "before the sacrament." اِلْشَابِيْنِ, pl. of اِلْشَبِيْنِ,
 "Sponsors." دَعْوَةٌ, "Prayer; petition." وَهْمٌ طَائِفُوْنَ بِهِ, 219
 "while being carried in procession." تَفَاوُلُوْهُ ضَرْبًا وَوَحْزًا,
 "they fell upon him with kicks and blows." هُوْنٌ hōn,
 colloq. for هُنَا, "Here!" مَلَاذٌ, "Asylum; sanctuary."
 اِعْتَصَمَ, "To take refuge; find shelter." يَلْطَأُ, لَطِيءٌ, "To
 cleave to the ground." اَنْفَ مِنْ, "To disdain; scorn."
-

EXTRACTS FROM "*Kashfu'l-Mukhābbā*."

- بَوَارِجُ, pl. of بَارِجَةٌ, "War ships." شَيْفَتَانِكِيْه, "Civita- 220
 vecchia." اَلْاَجْرُ, "Bricks." عِدَّةٌ اَعْلَامُ, "several public
 institutions." مِدْرَاسُ, "Synagogue." مَرْوَحُ, "Pala-
 ces." لَا تَسْتَعْكِمُ, "symmetrically built." مُتَفَاوِضَةُ الْوَضْعِ, 221
 "is not powerful; does not penetrate." شُرَفَاتُ, "Battle-
 ments, galleries." الْحَضِيضُ, "The ground; ground-
 floor." خَلِيْجٌ, "Bay; inlet." الْبُورْسُ, "Bourse;
 the exchange." مِرْآةٌ, pl. of مَرَايَا, "Suburbs." ضَوَاحِ, "Mirrors."
 قِيَانُ, "Singing girls." نَهْرُوا نَهْرًا, "They

- 222 dug a canal." عَرَمَاتٌ, "Squares." بَيْعَةٌ, "Merchandise ; goods." بِلَاغٍ مِنَ الْقَوْلِ, "by a peculiar mode of speaking." التَّلْقِينُ^١, "Suggestion ; instruction." سَكَّةُ الْحَدِيدِ, "Comprehension ; grasping ; learning." حَافِلَةُ الْمَجْدِ, "Railway." حَافِلَةُ الْمَجْدِ, "Stage-coach ; diligence."
- 223 وَفِي مَسَافَةِ الطَّرِيقِ, "Coal ; pit-coal." فَحْمُ الْحَجَرِ, "on the way." الرَّتْلِ, "the train." قُبُورُهُ, "Tunnel." الشَّرِيطُ, "hewn." مَعَامِلُ, "Factories." مَنَقُورَةٌ, "Ribbon ; silk lace." الْمَيْرَةُ, "Food-stuffs ; provisions." طَغَى, "To overflow ; break forth." الْمَاشِيَّةُ, "Cattle." أَنْتَخَى, "To bestir oneself (through a sense of honour or duty)."
- 224 كَانَتْ, "the government was a republic." السِّيَاسَةُ جُمْهُورِيَّةٌ, "The refuge of fugitives." وَمَأْمَنُ الْفَارِيقِ, "and the sanctuary of residents." الْمَفْجُوعُ, "the afflicted ; unfortunate." الْمَغْبُوطُ, "the fortunate." مَآخِرَةٌ بِنَا, "ploughing the deep (ship)." يَقْضِي بِالْأَسْفِ عَلَى

¹ *Lahn*, "Saying anything to one which he understands, but is unintelligible to every other person."

- “that makes one regret.” **مِنْ حِجَةِ أَنْ**, “because; for the reason that.” **نَقَمَ**, “To resent; be angry, displeased with one.” **مَيْرَ**, “Mayor.” **فُرُصَ**, pl. of **فُرْصَةٌ**, “Sea-ports.” **قَبْنِيْنَةٌ**, “Bottle.” **الْكُمْرُكُ**, “Custom-house.” **مَا يَوْجِبُ الْإِدَاءَ**, “anything dutiable.”
- 225 **أَعْدَمَتْهُ**, “Portmanteau.” **خُرْجَ**, “Separate.” **مُسَنَّقَةً**, — **الْجَمْعِيَّةُ** **الْمُتَوَكِّلَةُ**, “whom the Committee entrusted with the work of comparing my translation.” **لَمْ يَتِمَّكَ مِنْ**, “could not completely master.” **أَكْرَمَ مَتَوَايَ**, “received me honourably.” **الْمَنْفَى**, “To take care to.” **عُنِيَ بِ**, “Exile.” **الذَّوْرَةُ**, “The Bible.” **لَا طَبَّ**, “To be dear to; intertwine (itself) round the heart; please.”
- الْبَبْنُ الْمَذِيْقُ**, “Carrots.” **الْجَزَرُ**, “Butter.” **الزُبْدَةُ**, “Milk mixed with water.” **بَلِيدَةٌ**, “a small town.”
- 226 **الْبَنُّ**, “will charge, or ask, him to do so.” **كَلَفَهُ بِهِ**, “Coffee-berry.” **رَامُوزَ**, “Sample.” **مُبْتَرَحَ**, “Severe; distressing.” **لِقَوَامِ عَيْشِهِ**, “to keep himself alive.”
- الْأَنْكَلِيْسُ**, “Crab.” **السَّرَطَانُ**, “Oyster.” **مَعَارُ الْبَحْرِ**, “Conger-eel.” **الْبَسْتَرُ**, “Lobster.” **مَسِيْضٌ**, “Tasteless;”

insipid." رَيْبُ الثَّلَاجِ, "Salmon." سَمْنٌ, *Lit.* "foster-child of the ice," i.e., "ice-preserved." جَمٌّ, "multifarious." تَشَفٌّ, "Penury; wretched condition." الإِمْلَاقُ, "Poverty; destitution." الْإِعْتِفَادُ, "Shutting the door upon one's self and dying of hunger." الْكَنِيسَةُ الْمُتَأَمِّلَةُ, "The Established Church." الْمُتَنَحِّرُ, "A suicide." — دَحَاها اللهُ الخ, "God has created, lit. spread it out, to be."

227 ذَا رُؤَاٍ وَرِيَاشٍ, "Trusted." مَأْمُونُونَ, "a man of gentility and wealth." يَلِيّ, رَلِيّ, "To attend to; minister." لَيْرَةٌ, "a Turkish pound." مُلَاكُ الْأَرْضِ, "Landlords." فِي دَوِيرَتِهِ, "in his little farm." وَتَبَلَّغَ بِهَا, "Meat fried with butter and spiced." بَانِتًا, "and eats it (in small quantities)." خَنَزِيرٌ, pl. of خَنَزِيرٌ, "little pigs."

228 لَاسْتِنْشَاقِ الْهَوَاءِ, "common vegetables." خَسِيْسُ الْبُقُولِ, "to take the air." رَهِيْنُ بَيْتِهِ, "confined to his house; within doors." إِلَّا مُرَكَّوبَ النَّعْلِ, "nothing but shoes to ride." الدَّمَانُ, "Box; cart." التَّابُوتُ, "Dung; manure." يَنْبُطُ, "Ale." اِفْتَصَرَ عَنِ, "To cease; discontinue."

- , الْمَرْعِيُّ , “drawn through a tap (=draft ale).” بِالْمَنْبِطَةِ ,
 “preserved.” مُزْهَقٌ , “Irksome; trying.” أَهْلُ الرِّيفِ ,
 “The rural population.” الْجَعَّةُ , “Beer.” بِقَبُولِ الْعَمَلِ , 229
 “of the acceptance of her sincere prayer, or interces-
 sion, on the subject of the unsincere ¹ milk.” مَطْطَاةٌ ,
 , رَأْسٌ , “and bowing of head.” ظَامِيٌّ , “Thirsty.”
 , الْقَدَمِيلُ , “Quick lime.” الْجِيرُ , “Turnips.” الْفَلْتُ ,
 , مَقْدَارُ قَامَةِ الرَّبْعَةِ , “Enormous.” فَاحِشٌ , “Manuring.”
 , الْلُوبِيَاءُ , “about the height of a middle-sized man.”
 , الْخَسُّ , “Cress.” الرَّشَادُ , “Haricot beans.”
 , الْكَرْفُسُ , “Celery.” النَّعْنَاعُ , “Lettuce.”
 , الْقَذْبِيْتُ , “Cauliflower.” دِيكُ حَبَشِيٍّ ,
 , الْأَتَامُ , “To plow.” يَحْرَثُ , حَرَثَ , “Cyprus.” قَبْرُسُ , 230
 pl. of تَلَمٌ , “Furrows.” الْمَوْزُ , “Banana.” الْخَوْخُ , in
 Syria, “Prune”; in Egypt and elsewhere, “Peach.”
 , الصَّنَوْبَرُ , “Fruit of the pine-
 tree.” مَاهِيْنَةٌ , “the nature of it; what it is.” الْبَامِيَا ,

¹ In the obsolete sense of “adulterated.”

"*Hibiscus esculentus*; okra; gumbo." ¹ الْحَمَّصُ

"Chick-pea." الْخَرْشَفُ ², "Artichoke." شَجَرُ الثَّوْتِ

"Mulberry." الْمَطَامِرُ, pl. of مَطَرٌ, n. of place from

طَمَرٌ, "To bury." حَثَرٌ, "Unripe, sour grape." أَيْنَعُ

تَافَةُ, "To ripen." حَبُّ الْآسِ, "Myrtle-seed." تَافَةُ

231 "Insipid." التَّحْرِي, "Investigation." السَّرْقِينِ, "Dung;

manure." لَا عَرَبَ لَهُ, "Scentless; inodorous." بَاقَةٌ

"Bouquet." وَفِي أَعْيَادِ مِيلَادِهِنَّ, "on their birthdays."

ac- "في الواقع", "given to them as a present." يَطْرَفُنَّ بِهِ

tually." صَلََّةُ الرَّحِمِ, "a bond of love between kindred."

"they present her": نَقَطَ, "To present

money (to a bride)." بُورٌ, "Fallow land." نَامٍ

"Plants; vegetables": from نَمَا, "To grow."

والغرب الأقصى, "A flat plain; open country." قَاعٌ صَفْصَفٌ

232 "The farthest west; Morocco." طَنْ, "Ton." إِقْلِيمُ

وإذا دَخَلْتَ حِمَى شِيشِيرَ, "The county of Kent." كُنْتَ

فَهَرْدَلٌ, "when thou enterest within the Sanctuary, or

¹ Vulg. "Lady's fingers."

² Colloq., *kharshūf*.

precincts, of Cheshire, hie thee along." ¹ ضَالِيعٌ, "Strong; powerful." كَالْبُرْجِ الْمَرْصُوصِ, "like a solid tower." مَمْشُوقٌ, "Slender; shapely." أَعْتَقٌ, "more noble or generous." أَلَيَّا, pl. of أَلِيَّةٌ, "Tail (of a sheep)." بِأَنْ تُحَلِّقَ الْحَوَاجِبُ عَلَى فَقْدِهِ, "Tailless sheep." "that the brows should be shaved on the occasion of its death." ² الْمِزْيِ, "goats." رَتِيلَا, "Venomous 233 spider." سَوَامُ أَبْرَصَ, "Lizards." رِبْنُ آرَى, "Jackal." مَخْشَبٌ, "Squeaking." شَقْشَقَةٌ, "Ichneumon." نَمَسٌ, "Wooden floors of rooms; the boards." كَلَسَ, "To plaster." تَرَسَمَ, "To examine; survey." عَضَادٌ, pl. of عَضَادَةٌ, "Posts." مَهْنَدَسَةٌ, "handsome." قُضْبَانٌ, "Pottery." الْخَزْفُ, "Slates." الْوَاحُ الْمَكَاتِبُ الْغَمْ, pl. of قُضْبٍ, "Rods." مَسْنَمٌ, "gabled." ضَرِيْبَةٌ, "Tax." مَوَاقِدُ, pl. of مَوْقِدٌ, "Fire-place; hearth." أَسْرَقَتُمْ, pl. of سَرَقٌ, "Beds." اللَّبَدُ, "Felt." بَيْنَ بَيْنَ, 234 "Middling." الْبَلُورُ, "Glass; crystal." دَرَجٌ, "Steps."

¹ An allusion to the beauty of the women of Cheshire.

² Among the ancient Egyptians the cat was a sacred animal; sacrifices were offered in its honour, and its body was embalmed at death.

غَلَّةُ الدَّارِ , "Mahogany." المَاهِيْكَوْنُ , "Floor." أَرْضِيَّةٌ ,

"Rent (of a house)." مَعْطَلِيْن , "idle; unemployed."

الْحَشِيْشُ , "rushing headlong (to evil)." مُتَتَرِّعِيْنَ إِلَى

"Hay." لَا تَلَبَثُ أَنْ تَلْأَشِيْهَ بِالْكَلِيَّةِ , "will soon consume

it altogether." 1 حَرِيْقَةٌ , "Fire; conflagration." تَشْفِيًّا

235 الفُجَّارُ , pl. of "to relieve their anger." مِنْ غِيْظِهِمْ ,

مَدَاخِنُ , "Chimnies." فَاجِرٌ , "Vicious; wicked; depraved."

سَقَطٌ , "Cripples." اِسْتَنْكَفَ مِنْ , "To despise; disdain."

حَتَّى , "To drink; quaff." يَكْرَعُ , كَرَعَ ,

تَجَحَّطَ عَيْنُوهُمْ , "till their eyes protrude, or bulge out."

أَصْحَى , "more sober." المَدَنُ الْجَامِعَةُ , "Big cities."

طَمَّ عَلَيْهَا الْمَاءُ , "submerged, a general rule." خُطَّةٌ عَامَةٌ ,

236 مَطْنَةٌ لِلْأَنْكَارِ , "Pharos." فَارُوسٌ , "destroyed by water." 2

تَقْرِيْبًا , "almost; nearly." "questionable, doubtful."

وَالْمَوْزِلِيَوْمُ , "Accurate, careful (writers)." ذُرُّ الْعِنَايَةِ ,

دِيَانَةٌ , "Diana." قَارِيَا , "Caria." "The Mausoleum."

وَحَدَّثْتُهَا الْمَدْلِيَّةُ , "Babylon." بَابِلُ , "Ephesus." أَنْفُسُ

1 *Lāshā* from *lā shai'*, "to reduce to nothing."

2 The foundation having given way.

- “and its hanging gardens.” قُولُوسُوس, “Colossus.”
 هُبَل, “Hubal, the chief idol of pagan Mecca.” جَاهِلِيَّة
 الْعَرَب, “The pagan Arabs.” سِدُّ الصِّين, “The Chinese
 Wall.” وَلْتَايِر, “Voltaire.” وَعِرَّةُ الْمَرْتَقَى, “difficult
 of ascent.” النَّتَر, “The Tartars.” وَخِيم, “Insalu- 237
 brious; unhealthy.” يَعْمَرُونَ, “live.”¹ وَالْس, “Wales.”
 رُسْنَاك, “Fine silk-stuff; embroidered satin.” سُدُس,
 “Campaign; the country.” السِّل, “Consumption.”
 حَزِيرَان, “June.” (ضَيْقُ الصَّدْرِ =) الرُّبُ, “Asthma.”
 الدُّكْنَة, “Darkness.” حَدَوْنَا حَدْوَهُمْ, “we followed
 their example.” لَمَعَا, “by glimpses.” 238
 يَأْخُذُ بِالْكَطْمِ, “they sit, cluster, around the hearth.”
 نَعَارُ الْأَعْنَاقِ, “To take by the throat; throttle; choke.”
 كَبُّ السَّلْحَفَةِ, “The Slaughterer.”² مَاحِبُ الْقَامُوسِ, “the author of
 toise upside-down.”³

¹ Lit. “their lives are prolonged (by God).”

² The Anglo-Saxon name of November was Blotmonath (blood month), the latter name probably alluding to the custom of slaughtering cattle about Martinmas for winter consumption.

³ The author of the Qāmūs writes: “It is said that when the cold has become intense in a place and the tortoise is placed upside down, so that its fore and hind legs are towards the air, the cold will not alight upon that place.”

the Qāmūs.”¹ يَطْفِرُ، طَفَرٌ، “To jump.” الْبِرْكُ, pl. of
بِرْكَةٌ, “Ponds; pools.” التَّزَحُّقُ عَلَى الْجَلِيدِ, “Skating
on ice.” الصَّقِيعُ, “Frost.” رَذَاذًا, “in drizzles.” سَحًا,

239 “in a downpour.” قَصَفَةٌ, “A single roar, or clap
(of thunder).” كَثِيرٌ, “many.” مَهَوَاةٌ, “Preci-
pice.” الشَّاءُ, pl. of شَاةٌ, “Sheep.” تَسْتَدْرِي بِهَا, “where
she had sought shelter.” مُتَلَبِّدٌ, “Firm; compact;
solid.” يَجْتَدُونَ, “beg alms.” يُعِيدُ، عِيدٌ, “To cele-
brate a feast.” نَحْوُ شَجَرَةٍ, “something like
a tree.” فَالَسُ تَيْسٌ, “Valentine.” طُرُوسٌ, pl.

240 of طُرْسٌ, “Sheets of paper.” سَوْرَةُ الْبَرْدِ, “the rigour
of cold.” دِفْءٌ مُغَرِّ بِالْكَسَلِ, “an enervating warmth.”
الصُّفْرُ, “Copper.” أَفْنَى, “is more valuable.”
لَمْ يَنَاتَ لَهُمْ, “it wouldn't have been possible for
them.” قَامَ بِ, “To equal.” الْإِشَاءُ, “Extracting.”
بِلَادُ الْمُسْتَنْبِطُونَ, “Inventors.” الْمُسْتَرْبِحُونَ, “Capitalists.”
كَالْبَرْقِ الْخَاطِفِ, “The United States.” الدُّوَلِ الْمُتَّحِدَةِ,
“like a flash of lightning; lit., like blinding lightning.”

- يَتَعَدُّونَ, "Fare." الْمَعْلُ الْأَوَّلُ, "First class." الْجَعْلُ, 241
 مَدِيرُ الْمُزَجَّيَاتِ, "to look after the rails." الْقُضْبَانُ, "Engine-drivers." أَرَبٌ, "One who has lost a limb;
 maimed." أَرِيكَةٌ, "Couch." مَا قَعَدَ, "for as long as he
 sits." مَوَاقِفُ الْأَرْتَالِ, "Railway stations." حَسَاءُ
 الْقَطَانِي, "Vegetable soup." أَوْرَثَتْ, "it gives;
 causes." كَوَاعِدُ مَالِيَّةٍ, "Diarrhoea." هَيْضَةٌ, 242
 notes." الرِّسَائِلُ الْجَدِيدَةُ بِأَنْ تُصَفِّيَ الْعَمَلُ, "influences which
 ought to make for the refinement of their nature."
 الْأَجْيَالُ, "Nations; races." يَهْدُبُ, هَدَبَ, "To polish."
 الْهَمَجِيَّةُ وَالْإِمِيَّةُ, "a state of savagery and ignorance."
 أُخْرَى أَنْ يَرْتَكِبَ لِجَالِهِ, "are rather to be pitied."
 يَجْنُمُ, جَنَمَ إِلَى, "To be disposed to." التَّطَبُّعُ,
 لِمَا يَأْتِيهِ, "Adopting a custom." دَخِيلٌ, "A stranger."
 قَارِعَةُ الطَّرِيقِ, "with what he does." قَارِعَةُ الطَّرِيقِ, "the middle of
 the street." خَامَرَ, "To walk hand in hand." مَنُو, 243
 الشَّمَاتَةُ, "Rejoicing at
 نَكَائَةُ, "Foolery." الْعَبَثُ, "the misfortunes of others."
 أَهَاجَ, pl. "Annoying, wounding an enemy." الْخَضَمُ,

of أُهْجِيَّةٌ, "lampoons." أَحَاجُ, pl. of أُحْجِيَّةٌ, "Conundrums; riddles." الْمَعَارِفُ, "Friends; acquaintances." رَسَائِلُ مَرْحِيَّةٍ, "jesting letters." إِيْجَابُ تَبَعَةٍ, "doing a wrong act for which one would be liable." يَفْقَسُ, نَفَسٌ, "To envy." أَضَبَّ عَلَى (with عَلَى of the pers.), "To keep silence; not let a word escape one." تَظَلَّمَ, "To complain." جَدَفَ, "To be ungrateful for the blessings of God." ١ كَبِدَ, يُكَابِدُ, "To suffer." بَخَسُ النَّاسِ حَقَّهُمْ, "to withhold from one what is his due; to keep out of just rights; do injustice to the merits of others." جَذْوَةٌ فَرِيحَتِهِ, "the glow or fire of his genius": جَذْوَةٌ, "Live coal." رَبَّ دَوْحَةٍ نَشَأَتْ عَنْ فَرْعٍ, "many a big tree has grown from a small shoot." مُدَّعٍ, "A pretender." لَا يَتَشَبَّهُونَ مُنْطَقَلٌ, "Ignoramus; worthless." بِأَعْقَابِ الْأَقَارِيلِ, "they are not given to scandal or malicious gossip." قَالَ وَتَبَيَّلَ, "Gossip." فِي مَصْلَحَةٍ لِي, "about some matter or a personal affair." بَوْدِي لَوْ, "Would that." مُتَرٍ, "rich." مُقَدَّمَةٌ, "Premise."

١ 'To marmur and blaspheme whilst enjoying them.'

- وَالْمُخَالَفَةُ , “by way of courtesy and civility.” كُفَّ , “was hemmed.” يَعْثَبُ , عَثَابٌ , “To heed.” زَعِيْفًا وَزَعِيْفًا , “a noise and clamour.” 245 التَّوَقُّيْتُ لِلْعَمَلِ , “Fixing regular hours for work.” يَتَكَشَّى , تَكَشَّى , “To hesitate; shrink.” أَهْلُ الرَّئَاسَةِ وَالْإِدَارَةِ , “excusing, not blaming.” عَازِرًا لَا عَازِلًا , “Ministers of state; heads of departments.” أَحْيَلْ ذَلِكَ , “the question is referred to parliament.” يَمُوجُونَ فِي الْأَرَاخِيفِ , “busy with false rumours.” تَخَنَّنَ سَبَابُ التِّجَارَةِ , “Scares.” التَّهَاوِيلُ , “commerce is dislocated.” غَائِلَةُ الْحَرْبِ , “the evils of war.” مُتَجَجَّرًا , يَكُونُ شَرْعًا , “is uniform, alike.” يَنْيَحُ , تَاحَ , “interned.” 246 طَابَعَ مُصَمَّغٌ , “gummed stamp.” خَفِيٌّ , عُنْوَانٌ , “Superscription; address.” إِنْذَارًا , ظَرْفٌ , colloq. “Envelope.” بَنَكٌ , “Bank.” “as a warning to the postman.” بَغَيْرِ حِشْمَةٍ , “without reserve” 247 السَّارِي , “Night-farer.” وَلَا يَأْخُذُ غَرِيْمًا مَحْقُوقًا , “nor can he arrest a or fear.”

judgment debtor." الْعَسَسُ , "Night patrol." وَبَهَتْكَ
 حَجَابَهَا , "and insult her, or outrage her modesty."
 بَسْطَةُ , "Expansion ; development." كَوَافِعُ الرِّيحِ , "Blasts
 of wind." غَرْسٌ , "Young plant; shoot." الْخَيَالُ ,
 "Ghost." تَبَّتِ الْعَادَتَانِ , "Cursed habits they both are !"
 طَرَسٌ , "Manuscript." الطَّبَعُ , "Dirt ; stain." تَوَرَّعَ مِنْ ,

- 248 "To shrink, recoil from." الْمُصَانَعَةُ , "Flattery."
 لِتَنْوِيلِ أَرْبِهِ , "in order to help him to gain his
 object, or to grant his request." الْمُكَابَاةُ , "Fa-
 voritism." الْأَسْتِجَابُ , "Desert ; merit." الْأَسْتِعْجَابُ , "Preference."
 نَسَمَةٌ تَتَحَرَّكُ , "To recommend." نَوْءٌ بِ ,
 "breath ; life." مُتَنَافِضٌ , "Contradictory." التَّكْفُّفُ ,
 "Begging, asking alms (with a stretched-out hand)."
 إِزْدِرَاءٌ , "Contempt ; slight." حُبُّ التَّنَاهِي , "love of extremes."
 سَكْنٌ , "Family ; home." الْمَوْلَى , "God." نَاشٍ , "common (disease)."
 نَاشٍ عَنْ كِبَرِهِمَّةٍ , "is due to, is owing to, a high spirit." وَسَمٍ مُطْمَعٍ ,
 249 "and lofty aspi- ration." أَيْنَ , "wheresoever." رَكِبَ مَتْنُ الْبَحْرِ وَالْبَرِّ ,
 "To travel by sea and land." النَّصُورُ , "Painting."

- هَؤُلَاءِ , "to cheat, swindle, people." غَبْنِ النَّاسِ ,
 "There! Take!" وَعَلَيْكُمْ بِالْفَقْدِ , "and have it examined
 by a tester." فَلَمْ يَكْتَرِثْ لَهُ أَحَدٌ , "but no one paid
 any heed to him." جَهْلَةٌ , pl. of جَاهِلٌ "Ignoramus."
 الْفَحْوُ , "Grammar." قَرَأَ عَلَيْهِ , "To read as a pupil to
 his teacher, i.e., to take lessons." النَّزَاهَةُ , "Honesty ;
 probity." تَقَافَى , "To exact, demand, payment."
 قَدْ مُمَّا وَتَوَرَعًا , "from punctiliousness and a sense of duty."
 250 الْخُرْقُ , "manual." مَقَامٌ , "Position; status." يَدْرِيَّةٌ ,
 "Folly; ignorance." نِطَاسِيٌّ , "Skilful, learned (phy-
 sician)." مُتَطَبِّبٌ , "A practitioner in medicine; not
 skilled." كَمْ مِنْ مَلَكَاتٍ جَلِيلَةٍ , "unless." مَا لَمْ , "Many
 a great talent." أَضَابِيرُ , pl. of إِضْبَارَةٌ , "Bundles; piles."
 الْأَوْبَاشِيَّةُ , "Vulgarity ;
 rusticity; ruffianism." وَهُوَ مَا خَطَرَلِيَّ , "which has first
 occurred to me." مُسَوِّدٌ , "Pure; genuine." وَقَعَ ,
 "reduced to subjection, enthralled." وَجُوهُ الْبِرِّ , "Ways
 or objects of charity." سِمَةٌ الْإِنْسَارِ , "a dejected, sad
 look." لَمْ يَخْتَلِجْ , "will not be moved; beat, throb."

- 251 ^{الْمَلَأَ}, "mankind; all." ^{اِحْتَفَلْتُ بِي}, "she received me very well." ^{يَعَافُ}, ^{يَعَافُ}, "To dislike." ^{بِأَنْفَاسِي}, "with my sighs." ^{مُخَلَّلٌ}, "Pickle." ^{الْجَزْرُ وَالْمَدُّ}, "The tide; reflux and flux." ^{يَنْتَرِسُونَ} به, "behind which they
- 252 intrenched themselves." ^{مُتَرِدِيًا}, "wearing." ^{شَعْرَ عَارِيَّةٍ}, "A wig." ^{فِي كَعْبِهِ}, "on the heel of which." ^{عَصِي}, pl. of ^{عَصَا}, "Staffs; croziers." ^{كَالْمَبَاخِرِ}, "shaped like censers." ^{مِرَاقٍ}, pl. of ^{مِرَاقٍ}, "Javelins." ^{بَعَثَ عَلَى}, "To lead to." ^{إِجَالَةَ الْخَاطِرِ}, "stirring the imagination." ^{إِكَامٍ}, pl. of ^{أَكْمَةٌ}, "Hills." ^{الْهَوَاجِسُ}, "Thoughts; fancies." ^{عَقَبَةٍ}, "Slope; acclivity." ^{وَالسِّيَّةُ}, "Welsh." ^{رَاحِلَةً}, "A
- 253 camel or other beast of burden." ^{مِقْلَاةً}, "Frying-pan." ^{مُنْفِقِينَ}, "Skilful; cunning." ^{لُبَابُ الْخُبْزِ}, "The soft part of bread." ^{مُحْتَنِينَ}, "Monotonous." ^{دَكٌّ}, "Flat hill." ^{الذَّمْسَا}, "Germany; now Austria." ^{رَبَّانِيٌّ}, "Theologian." ^{عَلَى حَدٍّ سَوِيٍّ}, "Alike; equally; without distinction." ^{مُسَامَرَتُهُ غَنَمٌ}, "Conversation with him is as a prize." ^{حَتْمٌ}, "A decree, an ordinance to be
- 254 obeyed." ^{السِّنْطِيرُ}, "Dulcimer." ^{الْمُتَقَاعِدُونَ}, "Retired;

- pensioners." كَاطِمَةُ الْمَلَبِّ, "unfrequented." غَيْرِ الْمَطْرُوقَةِ,
 "Stifling." مَبْقَلَةٌ, "Kitchen-garden." اَلْمَقْعَتُ عَلَى
 الباقى, "I was afraid for the lives of the others; was
 solicitous about them." بِأَدَى بَدْوٍ, "in the first
 instance." كَاتِبُ الْجَمْعِيَّةِ, "The Secretary to the Com-
 mittee." رَأَيْتُ الْجَلَاءَ أَجْلَى, "I considered it more 255
 cheery to quit." هُمْ مِنَ الصَّلَفِ بِمَكَانِ الْخِ, "as haughty
 as." مَنْ يَدُلُّ عَلَيْهِ بِحُرْمَةِ السَّفَرِ, "Boxing." الْكَلَامُ,
 "one with whom he could engage in conversation
 on the ground of fellowship in travel." مَا يَفْتَأُ تَسَخُّطُهُ,
 "that might take away his ill-humour, or sullenness;
 make him relax." دُخْنٌ, "Millet (*grain*)."
 أَشَدُّ... مُلْتَقَى, "most exorbitant in their charges." شَطَطًا,
 "Junction." أُرْشِدْتُ إِلَيْهِ, "I was directed there." 256
 يَلْتَعَفُونَ بِشِمْلَةٍ, "cover themselves with a kerchief."
 مَنَاسِجُ, "Cotton-mills; looms." قَاعَةُ الْبَلَدِ,
 "Looms." كِتَابُ رِمَاةٍ, "a letter of introduction."
 أَنْوَالُ, "Hills; 257
 مَسَارِعُ مَحْمُودَةٍ, "public services." نَجَرَاتُ,
 مَبَايِثُ, pl. of مَبَايِثُ, "Half; part." شَطْرُ,
 heights."

"Hotels." مَرَقَب , "Manuscripts." كُتُب خَطِّ الْيَدِ

"Watch-tower; ridge; cliff." (= مُطَلَّ) شُقْرَةٌ , "Ruddy

colour; rosy complexion." صَوْبَةٌ , "Reddish white

complexion." فِي كَوْنِهِمْ يَشْفَعُونَ الْغَرِيبَ , "in that they

258 stare at strangers (in surprise, impudence, etc.)." غَيْلَةٌ

"treacherously." الصَّالِحَانِ , "Sceptre." النِّيشَانُ , "Cross

of honour." نَعَى , "Gem (of a ring)." كَانُوا يَرْمُونَهَا

"were repairing it." فِي مَحْفُوظِي , "I remember

having read" (=if my memory serves me right).

أَضْمَرَ شَرًّا , "To harbour malice or evil thoughts; to be

secretly bent on doing injury." إِنَّ مِنَ الْحُسْنِ لَشَقْوَةٌ

"Beauty brings bane (cf. "The fatal gift of beauty").

لَا جَارَتَهَا , "She falsely accused her." تَجَنَّتْ عَلَيْهَا

مَدَّهَبَ الْبُذُرِ وَتَسْتَانِطِ , "for her protection of Protestant-

ism." الَّذِي رَفِيتَهُ لِنَفْسِهَا , "which she persuaded herself,

was tempted, to do." طَبَعَ يَصْدَأُ بِهِ ذِكْرُهَا , "a stain on her

memory." يَشُوقُ , شَاقٌ , "To inspire with a desire."

259 لَكَ ذَلِكَ , يُفَارِضُ , فَارَضٌ , "To confer with; consult."

مُرْسَلٌ , تَعَدَّرَ , "you may do so." "it was impossible."

- "Missionary." مُوَحِّدًا, "afraid." كَمَا جَلَدَهُ الْمُجَلِّدُ,
 "from the hands of the binder." الْمُفَدِّشُ, "Inspector."
 اجْتَرَأَ عَنْ, "in the ardour of his zeal." فِي عَرَامِ نَشَاطِهِ,
 عِيَابُ, "Duty; tax." مَكْسُ, "is satisfied." ذَلِكَ الْهَمُّ,
 pl. of عَيْبَةٌ, "Portmanteaus." وَلَا أَرْدَحَامَ حَمَارَةٍ مِصْرَ 260
 more so than the donkey-drivers of Egypt." جَوَازُ,
 "Passport." التَّغَوُّرُ, "Ports." عَنْ, مُتَخَلِّفِينَ, "behind-
 hand." مَنَعَفُ, "to be accommodating." أَنْ يَتَسَاعَلُوا مَعَ,
 "Museum." الْبُلْفَارُ, "Boulevard." نَقِيرًا, "(not) a whit."
 أَسْحَمُ, "Black." طَعَقْتُ, "I began." مَضَبَةٌ, "a place 261
 for fogs; a foggy place." أَنْيَقُ, "Beautiful; charm-
 ing." فِي الْغَالِبِ, "of uniform height." مُتَنَاسِقَةُ الِارْتِفَاعِ,
 "generally." رِثَاجٌ, "Gate; a great door with a smaller
 one in it." يَتَبَوَّأُ كِنًا, "lives in a lodge." مِنْ دَارٍ,
 "Suite of rooms; flat." مَقْعَدُ, "Sitting-room." 262
 مَرَاثِقُ الدَّارِ, "A native." دَارًا مِنْ بَابِهَا, "a whole house."
 "Appurtenances of a house." أَنْ يَسْتَقِلَّ بِدَارٍ, "to have
 a whole house for himself." جَلِيٌّ, "Burnished; highly
 polished." غَيْرُ مُطَرَّدٍ, "is not the rule; is not general."

سَجَادَةٌ, "Carpet." صُعْدًا, "upwards." مُطْبَقٌ, "shut;
closed." فِي مَوَازَاةٍ, "on a level with; parallel to."
نَافٍ مِنْ, "To express disgust." الْقَيْشَانِيُّ, "Glazed
tiles; earthenware pottery." قَصَبَةٌ مِنْ حَدِيدٍ, "an iron

- 263 tube or pipe." فِي حَيْزٍ, "on a level with." قَابِلَةٌ لِ, "are suited for." مِرْحَاضٌ, "Latrine." أَذْنَى إِلَى الصَّحَّةِ, "more conducive to health." تَوَكَّنُ بِأُبْهَةِ الْمَكَانِ, "denote,
show, the magnificence of the place." فَضَّلَا عَنْ, "let
alone." أَبْوَابٌ مُوَزَّجَةٌ, "arched gates." يَسْتَوْفُّ الْمُجْتَازُ, "that makes the passer-by stop and admire."
الرَّقِيعُ, "Firmament." قَاعِدٌ عَلَى شَوْكِ الْقَتَادِ, "sitting on
thorns." تَعَلَّلَ, "To move; stir; shift." سَاعَةٌ دَقَّاقَةٌ, "A clock (one that strikes)."
إِطَارٌ, "Ornamental piece at the head of a bed": orig.
"Hoop; ring." زَفُّ الْمَوْقِدِ, "Mantel-piece;
mantel-shelf." أَوْعَزَ إِلَى, "To order; direct." مِقْطَسٌ,
264 "Bath; tub." مَاءٌ حَمِيمٌ, "Hot water." الرُّمْفُ, pl. of
رَصِيفٌ, "Causeway; paved road." مَطَارِقُ, pl. of
مِطْرَقَةٌ, "Mallets." الْمُسْتَطْعِمُ, "A guest, or visitor; a

- customer." فُرْطَةٌ, "Napkin; serviette." الْفِهْرِسَةُ, more
 prop. نَبَخَاتُ مِنَ الْكِبْرِيتِ, "The list." الْفِهْرِسَةُ, "Sulphur-matches; matches." سِيكَارَ, "Cigarettes."
 265, وَفِي الْجُمْلَةِ, "Jelly." الرِّعْدِيدُ, "Tooth-picks." خِلَالُ, "but on the whole." تَابِلْ دوت, "Table d'hôte."
 "Men of respectability." ذُوو سَمْتٍ وَرَوَاو, "A thick cup." كُوبٌ سَمِيكٌ, "Preserves; jams." الْمَرْبِيَّاتُ, "Pastry." مَعْشُوشٌ, 266
 "of pure wheat." الشَّبُّ, "Alum." لَحَامٌ, "Butcher." الْقَرِيْشَةُ, colloq., "Curdled milk; curd." الرَّائِبُ,
 "Symmetrically arranged." مَتَوَازِي الرُّضْعِ, "Sour cheese." مَشْرِيبَاتٌ, 267
 "Mirrors." مِرْآةٌ, pl. of مِرَآءٍ, "The statue of an angel." تَمْتَالْ مَلِكُ, "Projecting windows."
 268, "The elect;" صَفِيٌّ, pl. of صَفِيَاءُ, "happy souls." الْأَزْجُ, "The Arc (de Triomphe)."
 "Holy Week." جُمُعَةُ الْأَلَامِ, "Omnibus." حَافِلَةٌ, pl. of الْحَوَافِلُ, "To abstain, refrain; shun, avoid
 (as a sin)." زُمُرَشَتِي, "Dried fruits." الْمَقْلُ, "Various

† Lit. "one asking to be served."

groups of men." مُحَنَبَشٌ, "Farceur; buffoon."

269 عَلَى شِبْهِ جُرْنٍ, "The common bean-tree." شَجَرُ الْمَيْسِ, "on a font-like basin." وَ عَلَى قَاعِدَتِهِ, "and on its base or pedestal." مُضَلَّعَةٌ, "Ribbed." أَقْلٌ, "To support." دَرَابَزِينَ, "Balustrade; railing." يُطِيفُ, "surrounding it." رُؤُسُ رِمَاحِهِ, "the points of its pikes." عُمُودٌ قَرَّاجَانٌ, "are leased or rented." مُضَمَّنَةٌ,

270 "Trajan's Column." اِرْنِيَّةٌ, "Natural, illegitimate." تَذْكَارًا لِمَآثِرِهِ, "in commemoration of his great deeds." مَلَطَى, "Passages." السَّقَائِفُ, "To remove." يُزِيْعُ, أَزَاحَ, colloq. "Shelter, covert." نَدْحَةٌ, "A spacious tract of land." مُتَمَاسَّةُ الرُّؤُسِ, "Failure; defeat." الْفَشْلُ, "The tops touching each other." اللُّوْفَرُ, "The Louvre."

271 الرُّنُوءُ, "Gazing." رَسْمٌ, "Portrait." الْأَشْيَاءُ الْعَادِيَّةُ, "Anti-
quities." الْمَنْقُوشَاتُ, "Engravings; works of sculpture." بَارِزَةٌ, "Naval instruments or objects." الْأَدَوَاتُ الْبَحْرِيَّةُ, "الأَثُورِيُونَ", "for coins." لِلدَّرَاهِمِ, "in relief." مَجَسَّمَةٌ, "Assyrians." الْجَزَائِرُ, "Algeria." الْهَنْدَسَةُ, "Engineering." لَمْ يَنْهَيْهَا لَهُ, "Basin for washing." طَسَّتْ, "he

- could not do so." سَرُّ مَرْفُوعَةٌ وَأَكْوَابٌ مَوْضُوعَةٌ, "couches raised on high and goblets set down!"¹ مَبْنُوتَةٌ, "spread."
- عَرْضٌ, "Representation; petition." عَلَى أَهْبَةِ الْفِتْنَةِ, "on the eve of revolution." 272 لَحَقَ, "The Bourbons." الْبُرْبُونُ,
- بَاسَلَانَهُ, "followed his predecessors." زُجَاجَةٌ, "A bottle."
- مَجْلِسٌ, "strong and well-proportioned." مَتِينٌ مَهْنَدٌ,
- رَصْدُ الْكَوَاكِبِ, "Privy Council." خَاصٌّ, "Observatory."
- الْمَحْكَمَةُ الْكُبْرَى, "Palais de Justice; High Court." الصَّنُوعُ الظَّرِيفَةُ, "Fine arts."
- يُنْقَحُ, نَقَعَ, مَبَانٍ, "Buildings." مَبَانٍ, "To revise; correct with care." وَيُفَكِّرُونَ الْمُرْدُولَ الْخَ,
- دَارُ السَّكَّةِ, "The mint." "and reject what is vulgar."
- يُطْبَعُ عَلَى الْمَصْرُوعَاتِ, "Machine." دُولَابٌ, "jewellery or ornaments are stamped."
- الْمِصْرُ, "The Exchange; bourse." مُقَبَّبٌ, "Domed; vaulted; arched."
- لَا مَدِيلَيْنِ 273 قَصَبَةٌ, "Pipe (of an organ)." أَرْغُنٌ, "Organ."
- الْمَجْدَلَانِيَّةُ, "The Magdalene." "La Madeleine."
- الْيُونَانِيُّونَ, "The Temple of Victory." هَيْكَلُ الْفَخْرِ,
- مَارِسَتَانُ السَّقَطِ, "its circumference." دَوْرَتَهَا, "Greeks." 274

¹ Qur'ân, lxxxviii. 13.

- “The Hôtel des Invalides.” عَذَابُهُ, “The town of jujubes,
Bône in Algeria.” تَبَعَةٌ, “Consequence; bad end.”
مَشْرِفَات, “Jardin des Plantes.” بُسْتَانُ النَّبَاتَاتِ,
275 “Museums.” تَارِيخُ الطَّبِيعِيَّاتِ, “Natural History.”
الدَّشْرِيحُ, “Anatomy.” مَرَبِضُ, “Lodging-place (of ani-
mals).” الْجَمَلُ, “The whale.” فِقْرَةٌ, “Vertebra.”
رَفْشٌ, “A shovel; spade.” تَرَائِبُ, “Breast-bones.”
خَمِيسٌ, “In short.” وَغَايَةُ الْكَلَامِ, “A boat.” قَارِبٌ,
276 السَّكَارَى, “The Thursday of Carnival.” مَحْفَةٌ, “Litter,
sedan-chair.” عِيدُ رَأْسِ السَّنَةِ, “New Year’s Day.” ظُلٌّ,
pl. of ظِلَّة, “Booths.” أَخْيِيَّة, pl. of خِبَاءٌ, “Tents.”
غِيْضَةٌ غَضَّةٌ, “Sights.” أَرْنَاءُ, “Fire-works.” شَهَبُ الْبَارُودِ,
“A beautiful, smiling, park.” مِيَاءُ خَرَارَةٍ, “Waters falling
with a murmuring noise.” الشَّلَالَتُ, “Cascades; water-
falls.” يَسْعَرُ, سَحَرُ, “To charm; bewitch; fascinate.”
277 رَمِيَّةٌ, “Hill; height.” مَدَى مَدِيدٌ, “Wide expanse.”
بُرْمَتَهَا, “in its en-
tirety.” تَضَاهِيٌّ, “resembling; similar to.” الطَّسُقُ,
278 “Tax.” النَّطْسُ, “Fastidiousness.” أَرْكُنٌ وَآلِقُنٌ,

“quicker and more adroit.” *الإضحاء في النوم*, “To sleep to a late hour.” *بُعُولَةٌ*, “Husbands.” *مَرِيَّةٌ*, “Distinction; characteristic.” *النُّطْقُ بِالْمَغِيبَاتِ*, “Clairvoyance” *السَّمْنَمُولِ*, “several sheets; parts (of a MS.).” *كِرَارِيْسُ*,

“*Somnambule*; somnambulist (hypnotic).” **279** *تَنَفَّسَتْ*

كَثِيرَ التَّرْدَادِ عَلَى, “she heaved a deep sigh.” *الصُّعْدَاءُ*,

“a frequent visitor.” *الْمُنْبِذَاتُ*, “Prophetesses.” *قَلِقٌ*,

“Anxious.” *اسْتَحْوَذَ عَلَى*, “To seize, attack; take possession of.” *وَيَخْدُرُ إِدْرَاكَهَا*, “and her mind becomes

torpid or benumbed.” *تُسَوِّغُ مُعَاطَاتَهَا*, “permit the exercise of it.”

إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ, “Unless indeed.” **280** *إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ*

“Divine things.” *تَدْجِيلاً وَتَمْوِيهاً*, “fraud and imposture.”

الْمُتَفَلِّسُونَ, “Philosophers; scientists.”

جَاذِبِيَّةٌ, “Magnetic power.” *خَاصِيَّةٌ*,

“Property.” *تَسْرِي مِنْهُ حَتَّى إِلَى الْجَمَادِ*, “that emanates, or proceeds,

from him, and by virtue of which he can

exercise influence over inanimate objects even.”

يَنْفَعِلُ, “To be affected, influenced.” *يَنْفَعِلُ*,

“much more so.” *يَمِيدُ مَا دَ*, “To move.” *فَضْلاً عَنْ*

مَوَائِدُ , pl. of مَائِدَةٌ , "Tables." حَظَرَ , "To restrain; interdict." لُحْمَةٌ , "Woof." سَدَى , "Warp." أَوَّلَ وَهْلَةٍ ,

"First; at the first." أَحْفَدُ , "more active or prompt."

281 النَّبْضُ , "Pulsation." الْبَلَادَةُ , "Dulness; sloth." الطَّرُّ ,

"Pocket-picking." أَغْيَرُ , "more jealous." تَنْصَبُ

الْمِهْمَاتُ الْحَبِيبَةُ , "Muni-

tions of war." الرَّهْوُ , "Vanity; pride." فَالْعِزَّةُ لِلَّهِ الْعِزُّ ,

("=is extraordinary.)" الْمُتَرَفِّفَةُ , "Pride; haughtiness;

282 فِي خِلَالٍ , "Play (theatrical)." تَمَثِيلَةٌ , "luxuriousness."

ذَلِكَ , "all along; all the time." تَأَوَّاهُ , "To lament;

عَمَدًا , "on cry ah!" إِنَّ هَذَا الْمَخْلُوقَ الْعِزُّ , "This creature."

خَرَقَ , "To purpose." خَرَقَ , "To lie with impudence." خَرَقَ عَلَى , "To impose upon."

يَفْقَهُ مَفْرَهُمُ , "Lies; daring impostures."

مَقْصَدُ , "A shrine; a place of

pilgrimage." فِي الْكِيَاسَةِ وَالْحَضَارَةِ , "in refinement and

civilization." خَاصِيَةُ الْبُخَارِ , "The property of steam."

الْكِيمَاوِيُونَ , "Chemists." جَزَرُ , pl. of جَزِيرَةٌ , "Islands."

بَرٌّ , pl. of بَرٌّ , "A tract of land of great extent; a country."

- 283 "at variance with." مُبَايِنٌ, "of the same" مِنْ جَوْهَرٍ وَاحِدٍ
 substance, or material." تَدَاوُلُ نَقُودٍ زَائِفَةٍ, "Circulation
 of base coin." الْخُلَعَاءُ, "Outcasts; worthless fellows;
 convicts." الْمُحَضَّرَاتُ, "Workshops." عَوَارِضُ, "Acci-
 dents." الْمُسَبِّتُ, "Narcotics." وَأَلْحَقْ بِذَلِكَ, "Add to
 this." الْعَطَّارُونَ وَالصَّيَادِلَةُ, "Druggists and chemists."
 1 الْمُحَسِّبُونَ, "Inspectors." غَرَمُوهُمْ وَشَهَرُوهُمْ الْغَمَّ, "They
 fine them and publish their names in the newspapers."
 284 "Funeral." الْجِزَازَةُ, "rated." مُسَعَّرَةٌ, "Nepotism; 284
 favouritism." مَسْتَفِيضٌ, "Prevalent; rife." يَمْنُونَ أَنْفُسَهُمْ
 "cherish a hope." يَفْتَدِرُونَ بِهِ, "to condemn, denounce
 this practice." يَتَلَانِيهِ, "to remedy this state of affairs."
 جُون بُولُ, "To press; squeeze; crush." يَضْغُطُ, مُنْطَاطٌ
 "John Bull." دِيْوَانُ الْمَدِينَةِ, "The City Corporation;
 Municipality." الْمَنَاصِعُ, "Privies." نَصُّ الْإِنْجِيلِ, "The 285
 word of the gospel." مُرَتَّبَةً, "with regularity."
 الْمَغْلُوقُ أَوْ الْمُضَيِّعُ, "Naturalization." الْحِمَايَةُ الْجِنْسِيَّةُ

¹ The *muh̄tasib* is an officer of the police, who examines weights, measures and provisions, and prevents unlawful game, drinking and the like.

“disregarded or neglected.” ^{وَحْشَةُ} ^{الْغَرَبَةِ} , “The sad, or dreary, life of a stranger.” ^{وَالْأَهْلِيَّةُ} ^{إِلَى} ^{الْإِحْتِكَالِ} , “and the capacity for learning a foreign language.” ^{طَلَعَةٌ} , “Face; aspect; countenance.” ^{وَالْبِشْرُ} ^{وَالطَّلَاقَةُ} , “Openness and joyousness of countenance.” ^{كُرُوسُ} ^{الْمُنَافَةِ} , *fig.*

286 “the cups of familiar conversation or chatting.” ^{مَعْرِضُ} ^{خَرَفَ} , “Exhibition.” ^{الْغَزَالَةُ} , “The sun.” ^{أُغْرِيَ} ^{بِ} , “To be inspired with a strong desire for; be stimulated.” ^{تَبَرَّعَ} ^{فِي} ^{الْعَطَاءِ} , “To give volun-

287 tarily.” ^{فُرَّ} , “Fur.” — ^{وَالْيَ الْأَيَّامَ} ^{كَيْفَ} ^{يَدَاوِلُهَا} ^{النَّحْمُ} , “and to the days how God makes them to alternate amongst mankind.”¹ ^{أَطْرُ} ^{الْمَوَاقِدِ} , *colloq.*, “Envelope.” ^{مُغْلَفٌ} , *colloq.*, “Envelope.” ^{إِطَارُ} , pl. of ^{نَوْعًا} ^{مَا} , “somewhat.” ^{يَنْوُطُ} ^{نَاطَ} , “Tube; pipe.” ^{أَنْبُوتَةٌ} , “Balloon.” ^{الْمِنْطَادُ} , “To attach.” ^{زَمَ} , “To bind; muzzle.” ^{نَاوُوسٌ} , “Coffin.” ^{هَمًا} ^{كَالْعَنَانِ} ^{لَهُ} , “which serve as reins.”

¹ i.e., He dispenses them by turns to men, to these one time, and to these another. Cf. Qur'ān III, 134.

- 288 "on a calm" ، فِي يَوْمٍ ذِي سَكُونٍ ، "But indeed." ، أَلَيْسَ
 day." ، لِيَكُونَ أَوْعَبَ لِلنَّاسِ ، "so as to contain more
 people." ، حَبِطَ عَمَلُهُ ، "in places near it." ، فِيمَا وَلِيَهَا ،
 "his enterprise failed, came to nought." ، وَزِيرُ الْأُمُورِ
 "Lawyers." ، فَقَهَاءُ الشَّرْعِ ، "Foreign minister." ، الْخَارِجِيَّةُ ،
 "Brokers." ، السَّمَاوِيَّةُ ، "a favour on the part of the giver." ، مِثْلُهُ ،
 289 "Request; petition." ، مِثْلُ الْكَرْبِ ، "The heart of
 summer." ، اتَّقَاءُ مَضَارِّ الْحَرْبِ ، "Avoiding the evils
 of war." ، قَصَرَ عَلَى ، "To limit, confine, restrict." 290
 ، يَخْتَرِقُ ، "To traverse; pass through." ، اخْتَرَقَ
 291 "in the" ، فِي الْمَسْكُونَةِ ، "The City." ، السَّيِّ
 world." ، أَهْلُ الشُّورَى ، "Battle." ، وَقَاعَةُ ،
 "He was forced to abdicate." ، اضْطُرَّ إِلَى أَنْ يَخْلَعَ نَفْسَهُ
 "of" ، مِنْ هَذَا الطَّرِزِ ، "Suspension Bridge." ، الْجَسْرُ الْمَعْلُوقُ
 292 "of cast iron." ، مِنْ حَدِيدٍ صَبٍّ ، "this type."
 "Road; passage." ، أُسْتُؤِنِفَ الْعَمَلُ ، "work was resumed."
 ، ذِكْرُ شَرَفٍ ، "A hole; a narrow, indistinct road." ، نَفَقٌ
 293 "An honour; a source of glory." ، الْعُدَّةُ ، pl. of عِدَّةُ

Equipment; harness, etc.” ^{يَتَرْنِمُ} , ^{قَرْنِمٌ} , “To stagger.”

“Compensation.” ^{أَرَشَ} , ^{بِالْزَمِّ وَالنَّضَامِ} , “by compression

and squeezing together.” ^{جَنَّةٌ} , “A covering.” ^{شَرِيطٌ}

“a band or strip of gold lace.” ^{مِنْ قَصَبٍ} , ^{مَفْخَعَةٌ تُؤَدِّنُ}

“a piece of metal showing their profession.” ^{بِمَهْنَتِهِمْ}

294 ^{لَا يَأْلَوْنَ} , ^{ذُرُ شَطَطٍ وَجَفَاءٍ} , “are extortionate and rude.”

“they try their utmost.” ^{جَهْدًا} , ^{شَيْخٌ} , “Chief; head

man.” ^{الْجَعْلُ عَلَى الْمِضْمَارِ} , “The fare for any distance.”

295 ^{الْخُورِيُّ آدَمَزُ} , ^{كَالَنْ} , “Gallon.” ^{جَمْعِيَّةٌ} , “Company.”

“Parson Adams.” — *Fielding : Joseph Andrews.* ^{تَرَهَّلُ}

“The being soft in the flesh.” ^{تَنْشَبُ فِي الْوَحْلِ}

“stick in the mud.” ^{وَتَقَرَّعُ} , “and jolt.” ^{لِضْمَانٍ}

“for insurance against fire.” ^{لِلْخَزَنَةِ} , “to the

treasury.” ^{يُرْزَأُ بِالنَّارِ} , ^{كَوَاعِدُ الْمَصْرَفِ} , “Bank-notes.”

“whose property is destroyed by fire.” ^{الْيَدُ بِالْيَدِ} , “The

296 Hand-in-Hand (established in 1696).” ^{فَائِدَةٌ} , “Inter-

est.” ^{الْجَدْمَى} , pl. of ^{أَجْدَمُ} (= ^{مَجْدُومٌ}) , “Lepers.”

“overwhelmed by a crushing blow.” ^{تَحْرِيرٌ} , ^{فَدَحَتْهُ مُصِيبَةٌ}

“Emancipation of slaves.” ^{الرِّقِيقُ} , ^{الزَّمْنَى} , pl. of ^{زَمْنٌ}

“Affected with a chronic malady ; crippled by disease.”

297 يَنْقِذُ أَخَاهُ فِي , “The Humane Society.” الْجَمْعِيَّةُ الْإِنْسَانِيَّةُ

الْمُنْشَأَتُ , “saves his brother in humanity.” الْبَشَرِيَّةُ

“Greenwich.” كَرِيْنْتَش , “Charitable institutions.” الْخَيْرِيَّةُ

“Crimes.” الْجَرَائِرُ , “Dispensaries.” مَوْزَعَاتُ

298 on , “on فِي وَجْهِ مَسَاعِيهَا الْمُنْفَوْعَةِ” colloq. “Rations.” مَوْلَوَاتُ

“who are all their various operations.” الْمُتَوَاطِفَةُ عَلَى

“like a إِنْخَافَ الْغَرِيْمُ , “Roots.” الْجُذُورُ

“To fit ; qualify.” أَهْلُ , “creditor.” فَلَا يَسُوْغُ مِثْلًا لِأَحَدٍ

“For instance, no one is permitted to, or can.” الْخ

أَكْثَرَ , “not so strict or cautious as.” أَقْلٌ ضَبْطًا وَتَحَرُّزًا مِنْ

“more easily duped by quacks عَرَضَةً لِلتَّدْجِيلِ وَالْمُخْرِقَةِ

“The Blue-coat school.” بِلُوكُوْتْ سْكُوْلُ , “middle class

“Navy blue.” كُحْلِيٌّ , “middle class

children.” يَسْتَلِيْقُهُ لِنَفْسِهِ , “considered it becoming or 299

أَبْجَدِيَّةُ , “The Whigs.” الْوَيْكْسُ , “proper to his rank.”

“Bubble الببِل , “Dictionary of Dates.” الْأَوْقَاتِ

“was إِنْهَمَكْتُ , “Illicit gain.” السَّعْتُ , “companies.”

يَتَفَاوَدُوْنَ مَسَّ الْمَدِيْنَةِ , “Company.” لُجْنَةٌ , “involved.”

“They take turns in patrolling by night.” فانوسٌ مُضَلَعٌ

“a ribbed lantern : bull’s eye.” ثَقَافٌ , “Detective.”

300 يَسَّرُ , “To facilitate.” فَضُّ الْجُمُوعِ , “Dispersion of

crowds.” شَرَسٌ , الْجَلْبَةُ , “Tumult ; disturbance.”

301 “Violent.” الْغَطَاطَةُ , “Roughness ; ill-nature.” كَتِيبَةٌ

“A squadron or force of cavalry.” أَكْثَانٌ , pl. of كِنٌّ ,

“Box (*theatrical*).” آلَاتِيَّةٌ , “The orchestra ; musi-

302 cians.” فَتَغْلُو الْمَقَاعِدُ , “The seats rise in price.” يَتَجَادِبُهُ

نَوْعَانِ مِنَ التَّارِيخِ وَالْأَدَبِ , “is based on both history and

literature.” سَرَى عَنْ , “To drive away sorrow.” النَّكَلَى

“A bereaved mother.” أَبْنَعُ , “Robust ; muscular.”

حَمَاسَةٌ , “Valour ; bravery.” تَذْمِيرٌ , “Threatening ;

menacing.” رَخَصٌ , “Soft ; supple.” حَزَقَةٌ , “Short and

ugly ; a dwarf.” سَرَدَ عَنْ ظَهْرِ الْقَلْبِ , “To repeat by

heart ; without a copy.” تَلَعَثَ , “To hesitate ; stammer.”

303 أَوْلُو عِيٍّ , “are silent, mute.” هَمٌّ , “A high purpose or

design.” الْمَبْتَدِسُ الشَّافِنِ , “sad and weary.” نَامَةٌ

“Sound.” يَرْخَى الْحِجَابُ , “the curtain is dropped.”

سَجَفٌ , “Curtain.” شَاكِي السِّلَاحِ , “armed cap-à-pie.”

لَيْسَ الْخَبْرُ كَالْعِيَانِ : Cf. "It was a thing to see, not hear."

—Byron. تَوْرِيَّاتٌ, "Innuendoes." مُوَارَبَاتٌ, "Double

entendres." التَّجْنِيسُ, "Play on words." أَطْوَعُ, "better 304

adapted." النَّغْمُ, "Notes (music)." جَانِيَةٌ, "Harsh; stiff;

uncouth; crude." وَقْتَنَدُ, "in those days." الْمَرِيَّةُ, "Pre-

eminence; superiority." عَلَى الْبَدِيهِ, "Extempore."

رَوِيٌّ, "Rhyme." زَعَمَ أَنَّهُ مَرْتَجِلُهَا, "which he alleged

to have improvised." مَبْجُوزٌ, "Apocopate; without

case-endings." مَهَابَةٌ, "Awe." عَائِمٌ, "One swimming."

نُصَبٌ, "the deep and shallow parts." 305

مِمَّنْ أَتَرَى عَلَى, "before their very eyes." أَعْيُنِهِنَّ,

كَيْفِيٍّ, "on those who slander their wives." حُرْمِهِمَّ,

"Armed warrior." خُوْذَةٌ, "Casque; helmet."

يَتَفَتَّى, "assumes the character of a young man;

affects the dress, manners, etc., of a youth."

يَتَشَبَّهُ, "personates an old man." هِمَّ هَرَمٍ, "a decrepit

old man." يَتَحَادَّبُونَ, "they assume the appearance of

a hunchback." يَتَجَانَرُونَ, "they act the part of a

madman." وَيُحَاكُونَ, "and they imitate, pose as."

مُحَاكَاةُ التَّنَاوُبِ , "and braggadocios." وَ الْمَتَحَدِّلَقِينَ ,

"The mimicking of yawning." الطَّعَامُ الْقَدِي ,

"Savoury food." تَكْرَجُ , "becomes stale or musty."

306 سَفَسَفَ , "Novel." نَوَّلَ , "borrowed (plumes).", عَارِيَّةٌ ,

"To prate; chatter." دَنَقَ , "To go into insignificant

details." يَأْتُونَ بِالْغَبِّ وَالسَّمِينِ , "they scribble, or write

badly: good and worthless matter mixed together."¹

مُشْتَرِكٌ , "One who talks to himself, soliloquizes." غَيْرَ مَرَّةٍ , "more than once."

عَظَاظُ , "Guitar." كِنَارَةٌ ,

يُكْسِدُهَا حَوْكًا فِي الذُّفُوسِ , "impressive: that makes them exercise an influence on the mind or

307 feelings." شُجُونٌ , "Ways; modes (= more expressive)."

أَسْتَحَالَ إِلَيَّ , "A wizard's wand." عَصَا السَّاحِرِ ,

"To be transformed into." يَرْتِلُ , رَتَّلَ , "To sing;

chant." رَمَتْ بِ , "shot out." جُمَّةٌ , "The top, head,

(of a tree).", شَفَافٌ , "Transparent." سَنِيعٌ , "Beauti-

308 ful." حَيْرٌ , "A partition." الْقَرْنَفُلُ , "Carnation."

¹ Lit. "they put in lean and fat, i.e., bad and good matter": a proverb.

² A place not far from Mecca, where a great fair used to be held during the sacred season, in pre-Islamic days. "It was the common gathering-ground where the art of song was cultivated."

- مَوْلِجَانُ pl. of مَوَالِجُ, "Gold or silver thread." قَصَبٌ,
 "Sceptres." تَدَبُّجًا وَسَنًا, "in beauty of colour and in
 brilliancy." صَفَائِحُ لَمَاعَةٍ, "brilliant swords." اُدْلِيَ الْخَ,
 "were lowered down." تَنَالَقَ, "flashing, glittering."
 ثَرِيًّا, "Chandelier; candelabrum." يَرْكُسُ, رَكَسَ, "To 309
 overthrow; upset." عَيْبَ بَ, "To maltreat; play
 the devil with." الْقَهْقَرَى, "backwards." التَّخَلُّعُ وَالتَّفَلُّكُ,
 "To dispose the body in particular postures; to contort
 the body into artificial attitudes." تَنْبَعِثُ صُعَدًا, "it
 rises upwards." تَنْقُضُ وَتَرْمِرُ, "shooting and twink-
 ling." دَارُ زَمَزَمَةِ الرُّعْدِ, "the rumbling of thunder."
 جَرَسُ الْخَمْرِ, "The Polytechnic." الاِخْتِبَارَاتِ الْعِلْمِيَّةِ,
 "as it possesses the property of giving electric
 shocks." مَجَالِسُ الْمَشُورَةِ, "The Houses of Parlia-
 ment." جَرِيْبٌ, pl. of جَرِيْبَانُ, "A certain measure of
 land, 144 yards." كَوِي, pl. of كَوَّةٌ, "Windows." اَمْرٌ
 دُوْبَالٍ, "a weighty affair; a grave, serious, matter."
 يَجْنُو, جَنَا: "on his knees" جَاثٍ عَلَى رُكْبَتَيْهِ, "To kneel."

- “Bullets.” مَقَاتِلُ , “Vital parts (of the body).”
 اجِنَّةٌ , pl. of حَنِينٌ “Fetus.” اسْقَاطُ , pl. of سِقْطُ
 “An abortion.” تَوَامِيْنُ , “Twins.” اَوْدَى بِهِ , “which
 killed him.” مَتَحَفُ صَرْنُ , “The museum of Sir John
 Soane.” اِزيس , “Isis.” فَوْدُ (= طَبَنَجَةٌ) , “Pistol.”
 بَطْرَسُ الْاَلْبَرُ , “Peter the Great.” بَعْرُ الْخَزَرِ , “The Cas-
 pian.” هُدْنَةٌ , “Truce ; peace.” رُشْنُ الْأُمَّةِ , “The
 National Gallery.” سَبَائِكُ , سنَوِيَّةٌ , “Annual salary.” 315
 “Bars of gold or silver.” رَائِجٌ , “Current ; good (coin).”
 اُمُوكُ الْعَامِ , “The General Post Office.” اُصُولُ , “Head
 offices.” فُرُوعٌ , “Branch offices.” السَّوِيْدُ , “Sweden.” 316
 الْمُعْتَرِفُ , “The Confessor.” (كَلُوبُ =) مُنَدِّي
 دَتَشْسُ , “Duchess.” رِيَاشُ , “Dress.” 317
 تَبَنَّلُ , “To devote one’s self entirely to God.” 318
 أَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ يَرُوْمُوْنَ , “in the third person,” بِضَمِيرِ الْغَائِبِ
 : الْغَنَى الْغَنَى : St. Paul’s first epistle to Timothy,
 vi. 9, 10 & 11. أَوْ بِالْحَرَبِيِّ , “or rather.” 319
 مَسْمَى , “The thing or
 person nominated ; the bearer of a name.” بَيَّتُ

- الْهِنْدُ, "The India Office." جَمْعِيَّةُ الْهِنْدِ, "The East India Company." اسْتَنْبَتَ, "was established." الرِّبَانُ, "Captain (of a ship)." يَتَجَارَوْنَ; "compete with one another." اسْتَقَرَّ, "was established." دِيَوَانُ جَمَاعَةِ الْهِنْدِ, "The India Council." الْبَرَاهِمَةُ, "The Brahmans." أَبْرَ الْمَنَاسِكِ, "the most pious act." بَرَهَامُ, "Brahma." إِشْكَالٌ, "Hideous; horrid; shocking." سَمٌّ, "Difficulty." وُدْعَاءُ, "Mild; meek." رَسْلُ الْإِمِيرَالِ, "Admiral Russell." وَإِنْتِهَاكَ الْمَحَارِمِ, "Violation of sacred things; sacrilege." هَذِهِ الْقُرْعَةُ, "this lot." مَضَضُ الْهَرَمِ, "the legend, myth." الرِّوَايَةُ, "Discomfort, or sufferings, of old age." كَالَانُوسُ, "Calanus." الرَّجَاءُ الصَّالِحُ, "is over-partial to them." يَتَعَصَّبُ لَهُمْ, "[Cape of] Good Hope." اسْتَطَرَقَ إِلَيَّ, "To reach; find one's way to." بَحْرُ الظُّلُمَاتِ, "The Atlantic." غَرَابٌ, "Galley." الْمَغَارِبَةُ, "The Moors." مِنْ خُلَاصَةِ حَدِيثَةٍ, "from a recent summary, or report." جَوْقٌ, "A troop."

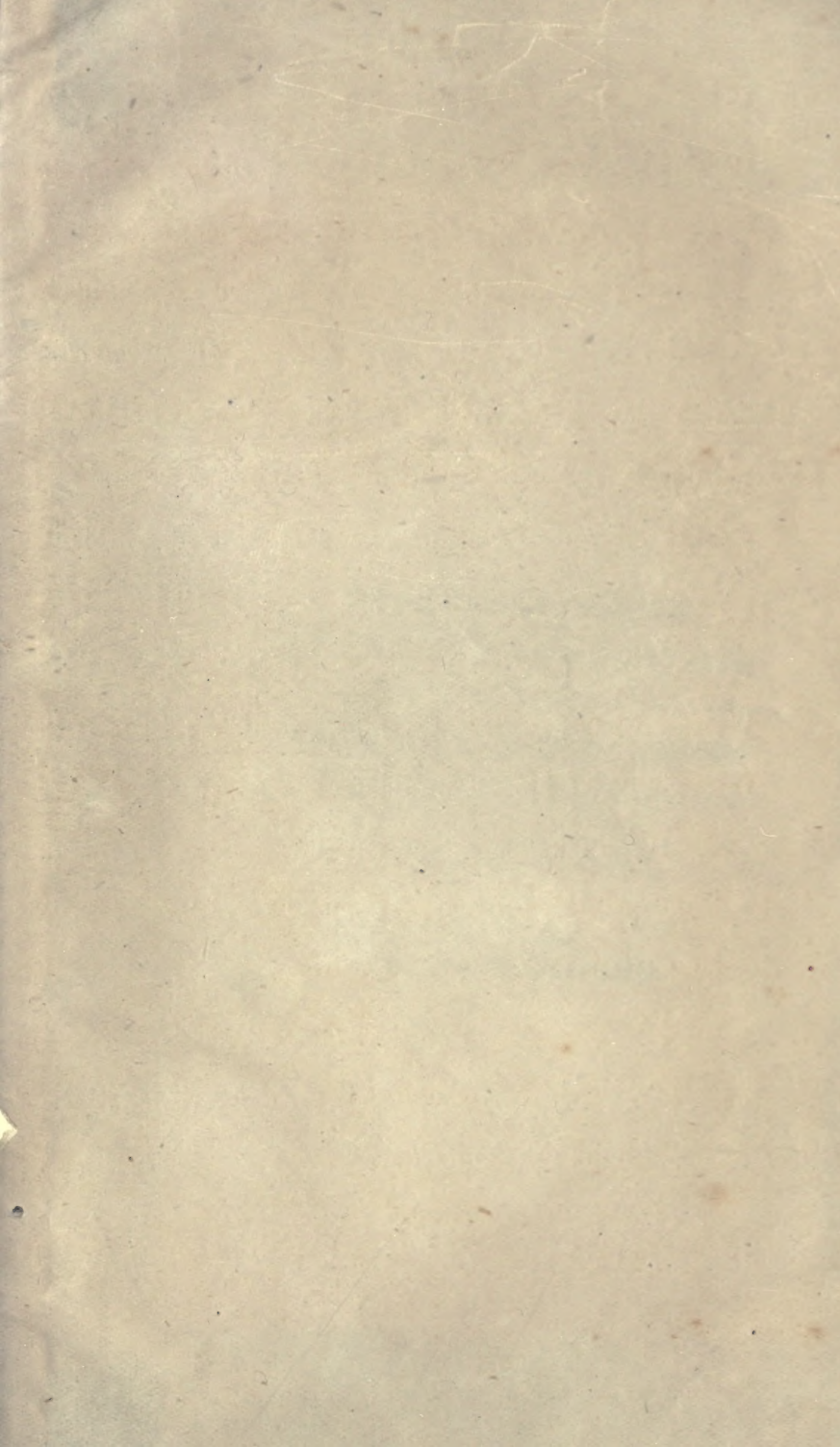
¹ An Indian philosopher, who burnt himself on a pyre in the presence of Alexander.

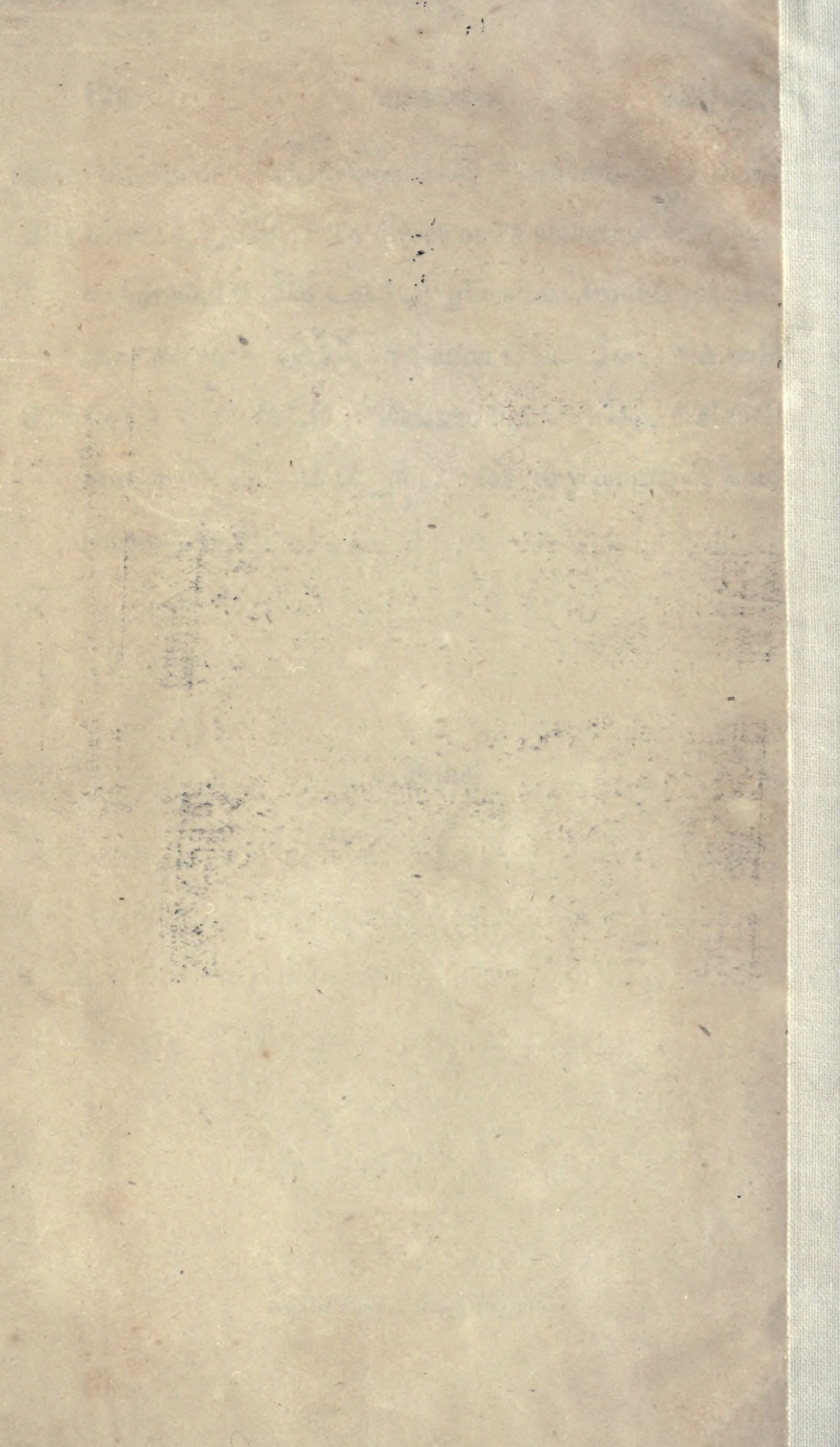
- فَاطِطُ الْبَلَدِ , "The mayor of the city." التَّلَزُّزُ , "Jostling ;
 pushing against one another." وَشَعَارَ سُلْطَنِهِ , "and the
 insignia of his office." مَتَكُمُونَ بِالْدَرَجِ , "clad in **323**
 armour." كَنَّا , "The Ganges." وَمَسَائِلُ , "Notes and Queries." بَرْمِيلُ , "Barrel, cask."
 دِيْوَانُ الشُّرَى الْخَاصِّ , "The Privy Council." سَائِرًا بِرَكَابِهِ , **324**
 "riding by his side or in his train." كَرْلُوسُ ,
 "Charles." مَارْ جَرِجِسُ , "St. George." الْمَذْبَحُ , **325**
 "The altar." غَيْرُ مَجْلُوءٍ , "unpolished." الْأَسْوَدُ
 "The Black." ¹ أَمِيرُ وَالِسِ , "Prince of Wales."
 مِنْ ذَهَبٍ مَطْرَقٍ , "of beaten gold." لِلْمُنَاوَلَةِ , "for com-
 munion." مَوَاضِعُ مَلْفَقَةٍ , "a jumble of buildings." رَنْصَرُ , **326**
 "Windsor." لِلْبَرَصِ , "for lepers." الْحَرَافِيْشُ , "Vaga- **327**
 bonds." وَحَيْدُ الْقَرْنِ , "Unicorn." لَيْلَةُ الْاَحَدِ , "Saturday **328**
 night." النَّقَارُ , "Quarrelling ; altercation." مَشْرُومَةٌ
 "with a split in the nose." مَلْمُومَةٌ الْعَيْنِ , "with a
 black eye." الْجِنُّ وَالرُّومُ , "Gin and rum." الْمَكُورُ , **329**

¹ The author has apparently confounded the Black Prince with Edward the Third.

- 330 “Refined.” ^{مُصَفَّي} كَانَتْ مَمْفِيَةً بِالْفَهَابِ, “was infested with rob-
 331 bers.” ^{لِ} تَصَدَّى لِ, “To direct one’s attention to.” كَرْنَوَالِ,
 “Cornwall.” ^{كُلْفَةً} أَحْفُ كُلْفَةً, “gives less trouble ; is more
 convenient.” ^{غَالُونَ} مُكَعَّبٌ, “Gallon.” ^{فُوهَةً} مُكَعَّبٌ, “A cubic
 322 foot.” ^{الْفُورُ الْكَهْرِبَائِي} فُوهَةً, “Electric light.” ^{مَلَاءَ} فُوهَةً, “Mouth ;
 burner.” ^{إِلَى مَا شَاءَ اللَّهِ} إِلَى مَا شَاءَ اللَّهِ, “for any length of time ;
 continually.”

FINIS.





PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

PJ
7671
A862

Azoo, Rizq Allah
Annotated glossary

